

CONTENTS.

THE INTRODUCTION.

THE PARTS AND FIGURES OF SPEECH.

	Page.
§ 1. The word—its divisions—its difference in form according to its difference in sense—its curtailment and disuse—its governing and being governed—the <i>op.</i> —is <i>lit.</i> and <i>id.</i> —the <i>lit.</i> is analogical or confined to hearsay—the <i>lit.</i> prevails over the <i>id.</i> —the sentence—is enunciatory or originative—the <i>prop.</i> —is more general than the sentence—consists of <i>r.</i> and <i>ag.</i> , <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> , or their equivalents—is nominal, verbal, and adverbial—the major and minor <i>props.</i> —the <i>prop.</i> sometimes occupies the place of a single word— <i>props.</i> that have a place in inflection— <i>props.</i> that have not a place in inflection—the <i>prop.</i> after <i>dets.</i> and <i>indets.</i> —suppression of the sentence—of more than one <i>prop.</i> —conditions of suppression—place of the supplied—quantity of the supplied—gradual suppression—form of the supplied—imitation—parenthesis—enallage—comparison, metaphor, and hyperbolic comparison—difference between hyperbolic comparison and metaphor—inverted comparison—transposition—abstraction—incompatibility of abstraction and enallage—address to an indefinite person, or to the speaker's self	i—xliii

PART I.—The Noun.

CHAPTER I.—THE NOUN IN GENERAL.

§ 2. Definitions—Signs	...	...	...	1—3
------------------------	-----	-----	-----	-----

	Page.
CHAPTER II.—THE GENERIC NOUN.	
§ 3. Definition—classification	4
CHAPTER III.—THE PROPER NAME.	
§ 4. Definition—is personal or generic—the personal proper name—the proper name is divisible into name, surname, and cognomen—is a single word or a <i>comp.</i> —coined or transferred ...	5—8
§ 5. Order of the name and cognomen—their construction—order and construction of the surname and cognomen	8—10
§ 6. Proper names of irrational objects	10
§ 7. The generic proper name—its resemblance to the <i>indet.</i> —what it indicates—its resemblance to the personal proper name—some genera have both a generic name and a generic proper name—distinction between the two—some have only a generic proper name—some both name and surname—some a name, but no surname—some a surname, but no name	10—12
§ 8. The generic proper name is concrete and abstract—abstract generic proper names—proper names of periods of time, and of numbers ...	12—13
§ 9. The measure of words	13—14
§ 10. The common name made proper by prevalence of application	14
§ 11. Prefixion of the <i>art.</i> to proper names—the <i>art.</i> denoting <i>prevalence of application</i> —irremovability of this <i>art.</i> , and of the prothesis in prothetic common names made proper by prevalence of application—the <i>art.</i> denoting <i>allusion to the ep.</i> —this <i>art.</i> is not <i>red.</i>	14—16
§ 12. The proper name interpreted to mean one of the class so named, and therefore <i>pre.</i> or synarthrous	16—17
§ 13. Determination of the dualized and pluralized proper name	17—18

§ 14.	<i>Mets.</i> for the names and surnames of human beings, for the proper names of brutes, and for generic <i>ns.</i>	18
-------	--	----

CHAPTER IV.—THE INFLECTED NOUN.

§ 15.	The discussion of the <i>infl.</i> why introduced here ...	19
§ 16.	The <i>infl. n.</i> —is sound or unsound—definition of inflection—its cases—apparent and assumed in- flections—non-inflectional adventitious final vow- els—penultimate vowels in ^٩ أمرٌ and ^٩ أبنم—in- flection of quasi-sound <i>ns.</i> —and of “the 6’ un- sound <i>ns.</i> ”— <i>dial. vars.</i> of ^٩ أب, ^٩ أخ, and ^٩ أحم—of ^٩ أهن—and of ^٩ أثم—the abbreviated and defective —definition and inflection of the abbreviated— and of the defective—inflection of the <i>du.</i> —the in all cases—vowel of the —co-ordinates of the <i>du.</i> —inflection of the <i>du.</i> and its co-ordinates is really assumed—inflection of the <i>perf. pl. masc.</i> and its co-ordinates—vowel of the ...	19—20
§ 17.	The <i>gen.</i> and <i>acc.</i> when alike—inflection of the <i>pl.</i> with the <i>aug.</i> and — <i>pls.</i> excluded by the term “ <i>aug.</i> ”—co-ordinate of this <i>pl.</i> —inflection of this <i>pl.</i> or its co-ordinate when used as a pro- per name—the <i>infl.</i> , or <i>decl.</i> , <i>n.</i> is perfectly or imperfectly <i>decl.</i> —inflection of the perfectly <i>decl.</i> , or triptote—and of the imperfectly <i>decl.</i> , or diptote 	28—30
§ 18.	<i>Ns.</i> when diptote—causes of diptote declension —they are <i>id.</i> and <i>lit.</i> —the of femininization and the <i>pl.</i> on the measure of ^٩ مفاعِلٌ and ^٩ مفاعِلٌ are independent causes—any other cause must be combined with a 2nd cause—mode of combination—inflection in the case of only 1 cause, of 2 causes properly combined, and of	

	Page.
and 2 or more causes improperly combined— qualification with (1) augmentation—(2) verbal measure—and (3) deviation—the quality of proper name with (1) composition—(2) aug- mentation—(3) femininization—the monograms used as names for the Chapters of the Kur- 'ān—(4) foreignness—(5) verbal measure—(6) the abbreviated { of coordination—and (7) devia- tion—inflection of <i>ns.</i> diptote because of the quality of proper name combined with another cause, when they cease to be proper names—in- flection of the defective whose counterpart sound in the final is diptote—triptote declension of the diptote—diptote declension of the triptote ...	31—44
§ 19. The cases are signs for meanings—the <i>nom.</i> —the <i>acc.</i> —the <i>gen.</i> —the <i>appos.</i> —the <i>noms.</i> will be first discussed, then the <i>accs.</i> , then the <i>gens.</i> — the complement and the essential ...	44—45

The Nominatives.

§ 20. The <i>nom.</i> required by the <i>att. v.</i> —the <i>ag.</i> — <i>ns.</i> that do not satisfy the definition—the <i>ag.</i> must follow its <i>op.</i> —neither the <i>ag.</i> nor the <i>pro-ag.</i> is a <i>prop.</i> —the <i>ag.</i> why in the <i>nom.</i> —its <i>op.</i> — usual order of the <i>v.</i> , <i>ag.</i> , and <i>obj.</i> —precedence of the <i>obj.</i> before the <i>v.</i> —and of the <i>ag.</i> before the <i>obj.</i> —posteriority of the <i>ag.</i> and <i>obj.</i> —construc- tive priority of the <i>ag.</i> —order of the <i>ag.</i> and <i>obj.</i> when the <i>obj.</i> contains a <i>pron.</i> relating to the <i>ag.</i> , or to what is attached to the <i>ag.</i> —and when the <i>ag.</i> contains a <i>pron.</i> relating to the <i>obj.</i> , or to what is attached to the <i>obj.</i> ...	46—54
§ 21. The pronominal <i>ag.</i> —the <i>ag.</i> and <i>pro-ag.</i> are not suppressible—number of the <i>v.</i> when the <i>ag.</i> or <i>pro-ag.</i> is <i>du.</i> or <i>pl.</i> —قَامُوا الزَّيْدُونَ, قَامَا الزَّيْدَانِ, الرَّجُلَانِ قَامُوا and الرَّجُلَانِ قَامَا—ثُمَّنِ الْيَهُودَاتُ and	

	Page.
<i>dial.</i> of BalḤārith Ibn Ka'b—gender of the <i>v.</i> when the <i>ag.</i> or <i>pro-ag.</i> is <i>fem.</i>	54—63
§ 22. The pronominal <i>ag.</i> continued—contest in govern- ment—when not allowable—the 2 <i>ops.</i> need a <i>cop.</i> —dispute as to which ought to govern the explicit <i>n.</i> , and which the <i>pron.</i> of the explicit <i>n.</i> —this <i>pron.</i> , (1) when it is a <i>nom.</i> , must be expressed, whether it be governed by the 1st <i>op.</i> or the 2nd—(2) when it is an <i>acc.</i> or <i>gen.</i> , (a) if it be required by the 1st <i>op.</i> , must be suppressed when it is not indispensable—and expressed when it is indispensable—(b) if it be required by the 2nd <i>op.</i> , must be expressed, whether it be indispensable or not—dispute as to the treatment of the <i>obj.</i> of the neglected <i>op.</i> , when, if it were expressed as a <i>pron.</i> , it would not agree with its exponent—إِذَا كَانَ غَدًا ء	63—72
§ 23. Suppression of the <i>op.</i> of the <i>ag.</i> or <i>pro-ag.</i> — إِلَّا حَظِيَّةٌ فَلَا إِلَهَ—لَوْ أَنَّ ء when the suppressed may be either a <i>v.</i> or an <i>inch.</i>	72—76
§ 24. The <i>inch.</i> —the <i>enunc.</i> —the <i>inch.</i> is of 2 sorts— the 2 sorts of <i>inch.</i> agree in 2 matters—the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> how distinguished from the <i>ejs.</i> — the <i>op.</i> of the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> —the 2 sorts of <i>inch.</i> differ in 2 matters—the <i>qual.</i> , when an <i>inch.</i> , must be supported upon a <i>neg.</i> or <i>interrog.</i> —must govern in the <i>nom.</i> an explicit <i>n.</i> or a detached <i>pron.</i> —and, with its <i>ag.</i> or <i>pro-ag.</i> , must make a complete sentence—the <i>interrog.</i> may be a <i>p.</i> or <i>n.</i> —and the <i>neg.</i> a <i>p.</i> , <i>v.</i> , or <i>n.</i> — Constructions allowable when the <i>qual.</i> and its <i>nom.</i> are both <i>sing.</i> —or both <i>du.</i> or <i>pl.</i> —or different in number—cases in which a <i>nom.</i> may be either an <i>ag.</i> or an <i>inch.</i> —or an <i>ag.</i> , a <i>pro-ag.</i> , or an <i>inch.</i> —which of the 2 <i>ns.</i> must be the	

	Page.
<i>inch.</i> , and which the <i>enunc.</i> , when they are both <i>det.</i> , both <i>indet.</i> , or one <i>det.</i> and the other <i>indet.</i> —influence of the sense in determining this question—the <i>n.</i> primarily an <i>inch.</i> —how made non-inchoative—the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> how deprived of their proper case—the annullers of inchoation—resemblance of the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> to the <i>ag.</i>	76—88
§ 25. The <i>inch.</i> is generally <i>det.</i> , sometimes <i>indet.</i> —permissives of inchoation with an <i>indet.</i> ...	88—97
§ 26. The <i>enunc.</i> is (1) a single term, (a) <i>prim.</i> , and then, according to different opinions, devoid of the <i>pron.</i> relating to the <i>inch.</i> , or assuming the <i>pron.</i> —(b) <i>deriv.</i> , and then assuming the <i>pron.</i> in some cases, and not in others—reason for its governing the <i>pron.</i> —the <i>pron.</i> governed by the <i>deriv.</i> <i>enunc.</i> when latent, and when expressed—(2) a <i>prop.</i> enunciatory or originative—the major <i>prop.</i> is biform or uniform—and the enunciative <i>prop.</i> is verbal, nominal, <i>cond.</i> , or adverbial—(3) an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> depending upon a suppressed <i>op.</i> —anomalous expression of the <i>op.</i> —the <i>adv.</i> assumes a <i>pron.</i> —the <i>adv.</i> of place is <i>enunc.</i> to a concrete or abstract <i>n.</i> —but the <i>adv.</i> of time only to an abstract <i>n.</i> ...	97—104
§ 27. The enunciative <i>prop.</i> , when not logically identical with the <i>inch.</i> , needs a <i>cop.</i> —the 10 <i>cops.</i> —the enunciative <i>prop.</i> , when logically identical with the <i>inch.</i> , needs no <i>cop.</i>	104—109
§ 28. Order of the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> —the <i>enunc.</i> may precede—must follow—or must precede ...	109—114
§ 29. Suppression of the <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> —allowable suppression of (1) the <i>inch.</i> —(2) the <i>enunc.</i> —preferable alternative when the suppressed may be either the 1st <i>enunc.</i> or the 2nd—(3) either term—preferable alternative in such a case—(4) both terms—necessary suppression of (1) the <i>inch.</i> —(2) the <i>enunc.</i>	114—127

	Page.
§ 30. The <i>inch.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> sometimes both <i>det.</i> —precedence in such a case	127—128
§ 31. Multiplicity of <i>enuncs.</i> allowable unconditionally—or only when they are in the sense of a single <i>enunc.</i> —or only when they are homogeneous—the most correct opinion	128—130
§ 32. Prefixion of the <i>ف</i> to the <i>enunc.</i> of the <i>inch.</i> implying the sense of <i>condition</i> —what sort of <i>inch.</i> this is—the prefixion not necessary—nor allowable when <i>لَيْتَ</i> or <i>لَعَلَّ</i> is prefixed to the <i>inch.</i> —dispute in the case of <i>أَنْ</i>	130—131
§ 33. The <i>pred.</i> of <i>أَنْ</i> and its sisters—its <i>op.</i> ...	131—132
§ 34. The <i>pred.</i> may not precede the <i>p.</i> —nor precede the <i>sub.</i> , unless the <i>pred.</i> be an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> —such precedence allowable or necessary—the <i>reg.</i> of the <i>pred.</i> may not precede the <i>sub.</i> , unless the <i>reg.</i> be an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> —difference of opinion in this case—other predicaments of the <i>pred.</i> —separation of the <i>pred.</i> from the <i>sub.</i> by a <i>par.</i> —the <i>pred.</i> sometimes more <i>det.</i> than the <i>sub.</i> —the <i>prop.</i> serving as <i>pred.</i> must be enunciatory, except the <i>pred.</i> of the contracted <i>أَنْ</i>	132—135
§ 35. Suppression of the <i>pred.</i>	135—136
§ 36. The <i>pred.</i> of the generic <i>neg.</i> <i>يَ</i> —its <i>op.</i> ...	137
§ 37. Suppression of the <i>pred.</i> —not allowable when the <i>pred.</i> is unknown	137—138
§ 38. The <i>sub.</i> of the <i>مَا</i> , <i>لَا</i> , <i>لَآت</i> , and <i>أَنْ</i> assimilated to <i>لَيْسَ</i> —resemblance of these <i>ps.</i> to <i>لَيْسَ</i> —rarity of <i>يَ</i> in the sense of <i>لَيْسَ</i>	138—139

The Accusatives.

- § 39. The unrestricted *obj.*—why named “unrestricted”
—why mentioned before the other *objs.*—*exs.* of
inf. ns. not unrestricted *objs.*—the unrestricted
obj. is *corrob.*, explanatory *c. mode*, or explana-
tory of number—it is vague or precise—its num-
ber—its *op.* ... 139—142
- § 40. It is sometimes not the *inf. n.* of the *v.* mentioned
—and sometimes not an *inf. n.* at all ... 142—143
- § 41. The *op.* of the *inf. n. corrob.* of its *op.* is not sup-
pressed—suppression of the *op.* of the *inf. n.* not
corrob. of its *op.*—some *inf. ns.* whose *ops.* are
suppressed have no *v.* of their own ... 143—151
- § 42. *Non-inf. ns.* governed in the *acc.* as unrestricted
objs. by *vs.* necessarily suppressed ... 151—152
- § 43. The pronominal *inf. n.* ... 152
- § 44. The direct *obj.*—belongs only to the *trans. v.*—dis-
tinguishes it from the *intrans.*—ranges from 1 to
3—is liable to be confounded with the *ag.*—such
confusion when common—the direct *obj.* how
known from the *ag.*—its case when the singly or
doubly *trans. v.* becomes *pass.*—its exchange of
inflection with the *ag.*—its *op.* ... 152—156
- § 45. Allowable suppression of the *op.* ... 156—157
- § 46. Additional *exs.* of such suppression ... 157
- § 47. Proofs heard from the Arabs—further *exs.*—sup-
pression of the *op.* when not allowed ... 158—160
- § 48. Necessary suppression of the *op.*—the *voc.*—its
construction—its *o. f.*—the *voc. p.* not absolutely
a substitute for the *v.*—classification of the *voc.*
—the *voc.* literally in the *acc.*—or constructively ... 160—165
- § 49. The *appos.* of the *voc.* ... 165—169
- § 50. Qualification of the *voc.* by ^{§_A}ابن or ^{§_A}ابنة not occur-
ring between 2 proper names—or occurring be-
tween them—the vowel of the final in the *voc.* so
qualified when doubtful—elision and expression

	of the $\{$ in ابن —qualification of the non-voc. by ابن or ابنة not occurring between 2 proper names, or occurring between them—the Tanwin allowed by poetic license in the non-voc. qualified by ابن occurring between 2 proper names ...	169—172
§ 51.	The vague <i>voc.</i> and its <i>appos.</i> ...	172—173
§ 52.	The <i>voc.</i> is not synarthrous, except (1) الله — يا الله and يا الله —(2) the imitated <i>prop.</i> used as a name—use of a synarthrous <i>voc.</i> by poetic license, or anomaly ...	173—175
§ 53.	Repetition of the <i>pre. voc.</i> ..	175—176
§ 54.	The <i>voc. pre.</i> to the ي of the 1st <i>pers.</i> — اب or ام as such a <i>voc.</i> —the <i>voc. pre.</i> to a <i>n. pre.</i> to the ي	176—180
§ 55.	The lamented—its conditions—prefixion of يا or ي —affixion of the $\{$ and و —anomalous vocaliza- tion of the و —elision of a final $\{$ or Tanwin before the $\{$ of lamentation—the $\{$ affixed un- altered, or converted into و or ي —the lamented <i>pre.</i> to the ي of the 1st <i>pers.</i> —substitution of the affix $\{$ for the و of the person invoked to help, or of what is wondered at—uses of the $\{$	180—184
§ 56.	Suppression of the <i>voc. p.</i> ...	184—186
§ 56A.	<i>Ns.</i> used only as <i>vocs.</i> —sometimes otherwise used in poetry ...	186—187
§ 57.	Necessary suppression of the <i>op.</i> of the direct <i>obj.</i> continued—the <i>acc.</i> of particularization— its resemblance to, and difference from the <i>voc.</i> —its form and uses—its classification—the anacoluthic epithetic <i>acc.</i> —this <i>acc.</i> ought to be <i>det.</i> , but occurs <i>indet.</i> —is called <i>acc.</i> of praise, reviling, or commiseration ...	187—191
§ 58.	Curtailment—its conditions in the <i>voc.</i> —the cur-	

	Page.
tailed is simple or <i>comp.</i> —curtailment of the simple—and of the synthetic <i>comp.</i> —the prothetic and <i>att. comps.</i> —2 modes of treating the remainder of the <i>n.</i> after curtailment—one mode necessary in ^ج مسلمة—both allowable in ^ج مسلمة— <i>exs.</i> of the 2 modes in the <i>voc.</i> —and in the <i>non-voc.</i> ... 191—194	191—194
§ 59. Suppression of the <i>voc.</i> — ^ج followed by a <i>v.</i> , <i>p.</i> , or nominal <i>prop.</i> ... 194—196	194—196
§ 60. Necessary suppression of the <i>op.</i> of the direct <i>obj.</i> continued—cautioning with ^ج إياك—constructions allowable after ^ج إياك—cautioning with coupling or repetition—proverbial expressions ... 196—200	196—200
§ 61. Cautioning with repetition continued—suppression optional in cautioning without ^ج إياك, coupling, or repetition—necessary suppression of the <i>op.</i> continued—instigation with coupling or repetition—suppression optional in instigation without them— ^ج إياك not used in instigation ... 200—202	200—202
§ 62. Necessary suppression of the <i>op.</i> continued—distraction—the <i>acc.</i> by distraction when not allowable—the <i>acc.</i> must be particular—the <i>nom.</i> or <i>acc.</i> generally allowable—place of the <i>prop.</i> after the <i>nom.</i> or <i>acc.</i> —agreement of the understood with the expressed <i>op.</i> in sense and letter, or only in sense— <i>exs.</i> of the <i>acc.</i> and <i>nom.</i> followed by an <i>op.</i> governing the <i>pron.</i> of the preceding <i>n.</i> —and of the <i>acc.</i> followed by an <i>op.</i> governing a <i>n. pre.</i> to the <i>pron.</i> —the <i>nom.</i> generally better than the <i>acc.</i> —the <i>acc.</i> preferable or necessary—the <i>nom.</i> preferable or necessary—the 2 cases equally allowable—the <i>pron.</i> attached to the expressed <i>v.</i> , or separated from it by a <i>prep.</i> or by prothesis—or contained in an <i>appos.</i>	

- of an extraneous *n.* governed by the *v.*—the
expos. prop. needs a *cop.* ... 202—213
- § 63. Suppression of the direct *obj.*—such suppression
frequent or occasional—the direct *obj.* then
meant to be understood, or clean forgotten ... 213—217
- § 64. The adverbial *obj.*—the *n.* when not an *adv.*—and
when an *adv.*—dispute as to whether the *n.* of
time or place, when governed in the *gen.*, is an
adv.—the case and *op.* of the *adv.*—the *adv.* of
time is vague or particular—the *adv.* of place is
vague, indictative of a known land-measure, or
derived from the *inf. n.*—the particular *n.* of
place is not an *adv.*—but is universally governed
in the *acc.* after دَخَلَ, سَكَنَ, and ذَهَبَ—and
occasionally after other *vs.*—not as an *adv.*, how-
ever, but by ellipse of the *prep.*—the *n.* of time
or place is plastic and aplastic—multiplicity of
advs. ... 217—224
- § 65. The *inf. n.* made a substitute for an *adv.* of time or
place ... 224—225
- § 66. The plastic *adv.* made a direct *obj.* by extension—
it may then be a *pron.* without فِي or *be post.*
to the *inf. n.* or *deriv. ep.*—original construction
of such *advs.*—extension in the *advs.* of the
doubly *trans.*, trebly *trans.*, and *non-att. vs.* ... 225—226
- § 67. Suppression of the *op.* ... 226—227
- § 68. The concomitate *obj.*—the sentence must contain
a *v.* or the like, or what is in the sense of the *v.*—
the concomitate *obj.* denotes *concomitance in time*
as well as *act*—constructions that do not sat-
isfy the definition—ambiguous constructions—
the *op.* of the concomitate *obj.*—the concomitate
obj. does not precede its *op.*—dispute as to whe-
ther it precedes its companion—constructions
when the *op.* is *lit.* ... 227—233
- § 69. Constructions when the *op.* is *id.*, and the expres-

	Page.
sion contains a strong notifier of it—sense of such expressions	233—234
§ 70. Construction when the <i>op.</i> is <i>id.</i> , but the expression does not contain a strong notifier of it—the <i>acc.</i> by subaudition of كُنْ after the <i>interrog.</i> مَا and كَيْفَ—reason of this subaudition—similar subaudition without مَا and كَيْفَ—dispute as to regularity of the concomitate <i>obj.</i> —no dispute as to regularity of other <i>objs.</i>	234—235
§ 71. The causative <i>obj.</i> —is the reply to “Wherefore?”	235
§ 72. Definition of the causative <i>obj.</i> —its conditions—construction of word indicating <i>causation</i> , but not fulfilling the conditions—alternative construction when the conditions are fulfilled—condition as to its unity with its <i>op.</i> in time and <i>ag.</i>	235—237
§ 73. Construction of the causative <i>obj.</i> when anarthrous and aprothetic, synarthrous, or <i>pre.</i> —multiplicity of causative <i>objs.</i>	237—238
§ 74. Resemblance of the <i>d. s.</i> to the <i>obj.</i> , and especially the <i>adv.</i> —IHsh’s definition—analysis of this definition—difference between the <i>d. s.</i> and <i>enunc.</i> —IH’s definition—what this definition includes—what it excludes—the <i>d. s.</i> belongs to (1) the <i>ag.</i> —(2) the <i>obj.</i> —(3) either—mode of avoiding ambiguity in this case—(4) both—union and separation of <i>ds. s.</i> —(5) the <i>post. n.</i> , on certain conditions—reason for these conditions—multiplicity of <i>ds. s.</i> —repetition of the <i>d. s.</i> —multiplicity or intermixture allowable—intermixture necessary—multiplicity necessary—order of the <i>ds. s.</i> in case of multiplicity—the <i>d. s.</i> is intended or subsidiary—contemporary with its <i>op.</i> , presumptive, or historical ...	238—244
§ 75. Its <i>op.</i> —كَيْفَ، لِمَا، and لِمَا—كَيْفَ، لِمَا، and لِمَا— <i>the interrog. and neg. ps.</i> —أَنْ and أَنْ— <i>the op. of</i>	

- tho *d. s.* must be the *op.* of its subject, really or constructively—precedence of the *op.*—precedence of the *d. s.* before the *op.*—^{هَـا تَأْتِي زَيْدٌ}—precedence of the *d. s.* before the *op.* headed by the ^ل of inception or the ^ل of the oath—precedence of the *d. s.* before its subject ... 244—251
- § 76. The *d. s.* properly a *qual.*—sometimes an *inf. n.*—other explanations of the *inf. n.* ... 251—252
- § 77. The *d. s.* mostly transient, but sometimes permanent—and mostly *deriv.*, but sometimes *prim.*—the *acc.* in ^{لَبْرُ تَغْيِيزِيْنَ} ^{جَاءَ لَبْرُ} not a *d. s.* ... 253—257
- § 78. The *d. s.* always *indet.* in sense—sometimes *det.* in letter—classification and explanations of the apparent *det.*—some allow the *d. s.* to be *det.* without paraphrase—the *s. s.* mostly *det.*, but sometimes *indet.* ... 257—263
- § 79. The *d. s.* mostly *expl.* of condition, but sometimes *corrob.*—^{جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَالشَّمْسُ طَالَمَةً}—the *corrob. d.* *s.* not a restriction of its *op.*—its uses after the nominal *prop.*—^{أَخْرَجَ} ^{زَيْدٌ أَبُوكَ مُنْطَلِقًا} or ^{أَخْرَجَ}—the *op.* of the *d. s.* after the nominal *prop.*—the *corrob. d. s.* does not precede the nominal *prop.*, nor precede either of its terms ... 263—268
- § 80. The *d. s.* *orig.* a single term, but sometimes a *prop.*—tho *prop.* must be enunciatory—and must contain a *cop.*—is nominal or verbal—^{كَانَ} and ^{أَنَّ}—with their *regs.* are *ds. s.*—the *cop.* of the nominal *prop.*—*exs.* of the nominal *prop.* connected by the *pron.* alone—the ^و with the nominal *prop.*—^{لَقِيْنَهُ عَلَيْهِ جَبَّةٌ وَشَيْ}—the *cop.* of the verbal *prop.* headed by ^{لَيْسَ}—or by an *aff. aor.*—the *aor.*

	Page.
occurring as a <i>d. s.</i> must be devoid of the <i>p.</i> of futurity—the <i>cop.</i> of the verbal <i>prop.</i> headed by a <i>neg. aor.</i> , or by an <i>aff.</i> or <i>neg. pret.</i> —the , with the <i>neg. aor.</i> — ^{أُ} with the <i>aff. pret.</i> —the , and ^{أُ} with the <i>pret.</i>	268—274
§ 81. The <i>prop.</i> devoid of <i>cop.</i>	275
§ 81A. <i>Ns.</i> used only as <i>ds. s.</i> —Z's mistakes about ^{عَظْمٌ}	275
§ 82. Suppression of the <i>op.</i> of the <i>d. s.</i> —of the <i>d. s.</i> —and of the <i>s. s.</i>	275—278
§ 83. Specification—resemblance of the <i>sp.</i> to the <i>obj.</i> —IH's definition of the <i>sp.</i> —the <i>sp.</i> is from a single <i>n.</i> or a relation—meaning of “from”—IHsh's definition of the <i>sp.</i> —points of agreement between the <i>d. s.</i> and <i>sp.</i> —and of difference—both sometimes admissible—the <i>sp. orig. indet.</i> —dispute as to whether it may be <i>det.</i>	278—284
§ 84. The single <i>n.</i> must be complete—is made complete by 4 things—and then resembles the <i>v.</i> made complete by the <i>ag.</i> , and may therefore govern the <i>sp.</i> in the <i>acc.</i> —resemblance of these things to the <i>ag.</i> —completeness is separable and inseparable—cases in which the <i>sp.</i> , though apparently from a single <i>n.</i> , is really from a relation—the <i>n.</i> is sometimes complete in itself—the <i>op.</i> of the <i>sp.</i> from the single <i>n.</i> in such cases	284—286
§ 85. The <i>sp. expl.</i> of substances—its number—the <i>sp. expl.</i> of direction of relation—the <i>sp.</i> occurs after all that indicates wonder—classification of the <i>sp.</i> from the relation—expression of the supplied concrete substantive—restoration of the <i>o. f.</i> —sense of the <i>sp.</i> from a relation, (1) if it be a substantive—its concord in number—(2) if it be an <i>ep.</i> —its concord in number and gender—the <i>ep.</i> may then be a <i>d. s.</i> —the <i>op.</i> of the <i>sp.</i> —the <i>sp.</i> sometimes governed in the <i>gen.</i> —or put into	

	Page.
the <i>nom.</i> —case of the <i>sp.</i> after the ^{فعل} of superiority	286—294
§ 86. Separation of the <i>sp.</i> from its <i>op.</i> —dispute as to whether the <i>sp.</i> may precede its <i>op.</i> —such precedence sometimes unanimously disallowed ...	294—295
§ 87. The <i>o. f.</i> of the <i>sp.</i> —suppression of the <i>sp.</i> ...	295
§ 88. The excepted—is <i>conj.</i> and <i>disj.</i> —definitions of the <i>conj.</i> and <i>disj.</i> —the <i>disj.</i> may be homogeneous with the multiple, or not— <i>exc.</i> in which the <i>exc.</i> may be <i>conj.</i> or <i>disj.</i> —inclusion and exclusion of the excepted precede attribution to the <i>g. t.</i> —the exceptive words—case of the excepted—the void <i>exc.</i> —does not occur in affirmation, except in certain cases—explanation of apparent occurrence in other cases—order of the excepted, <i>g. t.</i> , predicament, and <i>op.</i> —resemblance of the excepted to the <i>obj.</i>	296—306
§ 89. Case of ^{غير} and ^{سوى} in <i>exc.</i> — ^{غير} how governed in the <i>acc.</i> — ^{سوى} and ^{سواء}	306—308
§ 90. ^{غير} —sometimes <i>uninfl.</i> upon ^{فأ} or ^{ميد} — ^{فأ} —the ^{فأ} compounded of ^{أن} and ^{فأ} —government obstructed by ^{فأ}	309—313
§ 91. Concord of the <i>subst.</i> with the place of the <i>g. t.</i> ...	313—314
§ 92. Construction of the excepted when it precedes the <i>ep.</i> of the <i>g. t.</i>	314
§ 93. Construction of the excepted when ^{فأ} is repeated ...	314—317
§ 94. Intervention of ^{فأ} between the qualified and <i>ep.</i> ...	317
§ 95. Prefixion of ^{فأ} to the <i>v.</i> in the void. <i>exc.</i> —tenses of the <i>us.</i> before and after ^{فأ} —the <i>pret.</i> after ^{فأ} may be denuded of the ^أ and ^{قد} —prefixion of ^{فأ} and ^{قد} to the <i>pret.</i> after adjuration—the exceptive ^{فأ} where used	317—319

	Page.
§ 96. Suppression of the excepted after لَا , غَيْرُ , and لَا سِيَمَا —the , before لَا سِيَمَا ...	319
§ 97. The <i>regs.</i> in the <i>cats.</i> of كُنْ and أَنْ are assimilated to the <i>ag.</i> and <i>obj.</i> —the <i>pred.</i> of كُنْ resembles the <i>enunc.</i> —is sometimes a <i>pret.</i> ...	320
§ 98. Suppression of كُنْ and its <i>sub.</i> —and of كُنْ alone—the latter suppression has been heard only when the <i>sub.</i> is a <i>pron.</i> of the 2nd <i>pers.</i> —suppression of كُنْ and its <i>pred.</i> —and of the <i>pred.</i> alone ...	320—323
§ 99. Government of the generic <i>neg.</i> لَا —its <i>sub.</i> is <i>infl.</i> , and in the <i>acc.</i> —or <i>uninfl.</i> , but in the place of the <i>acc.</i> —prefixion of the <i>prep.</i> to لَا —and of the <i>interrog.</i> Hamza— جَلَّ , لَا —the <i>pred.</i> of لَا ...	323—326
§ 100. Conditions requisite for government of لَا —when they are not fulfilled, it must be made <i>inop.</i> and repeated—explanation of apparent instances to the contrary—it may be made <i>inop.</i> when the conditions are fulfilled—and, whenever <i>inop.</i> , it must be repeated ...	326—327
§ 101. The <i>sub.</i> , when a <i>du.</i> , <i>perf. pl. masc.</i> , أَب , or أَخ , followed immediately by the <i>prep.</i> ف , is treated (1) as <i>apothetic</i> —(2) as <i>pre.-ex.</i> of أَب —analysis of the 2nd construction—the <i>sub.</i> is <i>infl.</i> in it, and <i>uninfl.</i> in the 1st—effect of the ف in the 2nd construction—dispute as to whether the <i>sub.</i> is really <i>pre.</i> in it—treatment of the <i>sub.</i> when separated from the ف by a <i>non-att. adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> —or by an <i>ep.</i> ...	327—329
§ 102. The place of لَا and its <i>apothetic sub.</i> —observance of the place in the <i>ep.</i> and coupled <i>n.</i> —predicament of (1) the 1st <i>ep.</i> , (a) when the <i>sub.</i> and its	

Page.

	<i>ep.</i> aro aprothetic, and not separated—(b) when the case is otherwise—(2) of an additional <i>ep.</i> —(3) of the 2nd denied and its <i>ep.</i> when the denied is repeated without separation, and the 2nd is qualified	...	...	...	329—331
§ 103.	Predicament of the aprothetic <i>indet.</i> coupled to the <i>sub.</i> , when $\dot{y}$ is not repeated	...	...	...	331
§ 104.	Predicament of the denied when repeated, separated from $\dot{y}$, or <i>det.</i>	...	...	...	331
§ 105.	Predicaments of the 2 <i>subs.</i> when an aprothetic <i>indet.</i> is coupled to the aprothetic <i>sub.</i> , and $\dot{y}$ is repeated—predicament of the coupled when the <i>ant.</i> is not aprothetic—when the coupled itself is not aprothetic—and when it is <i>det.</i>	...	...	...	331—333
§ 106.	Suppression of the <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i>	...	...	...	333
§ 107.	Government of the $\dot{m}$, $\dot{y}$, $\dot{a}$, and $\dot{t}$ assimilated to $\dot{t}$ —conditions requisite for the government of $\dot{m}$ —its <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> may be both <i>indet.</i> , or both <i>det.</i> , or its <i>sub.</i> may be <i>det.</i> and <i>pred. indet.</i> —when the conditions are not fulfilled, the Hijāzis do not allow it to be made <i>op.</i> —instances of its occurrence <i>op.</i> notwithstanding that the conditions are not fulfilled—the Banū Tamīm do not make it <i>op.</i> at all—conditions requisite for the government of $\dot{y}$ —its <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> must be <i>indet.</i> , or its <i>sub.</i> is sometimes <i>det.</i> —the Banū Tamīm make it <i>inop.</i> , and require it to be repeated—conditions requisite for the government of $\dot{a}$ —its <i>sub.</i> is <i>det.</i> and <i>pred. indet.</i> , or both are <i>indet.</i> , or both <i>det.</i>	...	...	...	333—337
§ 108.	The $\dot{b}$ may be prefixed to the <i>pred.</i> or <i>enunc.</i> , whether $\dot{m}$ be Hijāzi or Tamīmī—and whether the				

	Page.
conditions be fulfilled or not—case of the <i>n.</i>	
after a <i>con.</i> following the <i>pred.</i> of مَا ...	337—338
§ 109. لَات—its ت—its <i>reg.</i> —its <i>sub.</i> or <i>pred.</i> is suppressed—هنا لَات ...	339—340

The Genitives.

§ 110. The requirer of the <i>gen.</i> —the <i>op.</i> of the <i>gen.</i> —reason for ascribing the government to the <i>op.</i> , and not to the requirer—dispute as to the <i>op.</i> of the <i>post. n.</i> —classification of the <i>gens.</i> —the <i>gen.</i> by apposition—prothesis—the <i>pre. n.</i> must be denuded of the Tanwin, and of the ي of the <i>du.</i> or <i>perf. pl. masc.</i> ...	341—342
§ 111. Prothesis is pure and impure—impure prothesis—does not import determination or particularization—is named impure and <i>lit.</i> —pure prothesis—is named pure and <i>id.</i> —imports determination or particularization— <i>id.</i> prothesis is renderable by في, من, or the ل—what the <i>pre. n.</i> gains from the <i>post.</i> by prothesis ...	342—346
§ 112. The <i>pre. n.</i> in <i>id.</i> prothesis must be divested of determination—but in <i>lit.</i> prothesis may sometimes be synarthrous—أل when prefixed to it ...	346—348
§ 113. The <i>qual.</i> followed by an attached <i>pron.</i> —case of the <i>pron.</i> ...	348
§ 114. The <i>n.</i> ideally <i>pre.</i> to a <i>det.</i> is made <i>det.</i> thereby—exceptions to this rule ...	348—349
§ 115. <i>Ns.</i> ideally <i>pre.</i> are inseparably or separably <i>pre.</i> —مَعَ—بَيْنَ—عِنْدَ— <i>ns.</i> inseparably <i>pre.</i> to a <i>prop.</i> — <i>ns.</i> inseparably <i>pre.</i> in letter and sense—or in sense, not letter— <i>ns.</i> inseparably <i>pre.</i> to a <i>pron.</i> —لِي pre. to a <i>pron.</i> of the 2nd <i>pers.</i>	

- anomalously to a *pron.* of the 1st or 3rd
pers., or to an explicit *n.*—analysis of لَبِيْكَ ... 349—353
- § 116. اِي inseparably *pre.* in letter and sense—or in
 sense, not letter—the *post.* when suppressed—
 determinateness and indeterminateness of the
post.—number of the *post.* ... 355—356
- § 117. كُل—its sense—its uses—its *op.*—its number and
 gender—concord with it in number and gender
 when it is *pre.* to an *indef.*—when it is *pre.* to
 a *det.*—and when it is literally aprothetic—كُلَّمَا
 —كُلَّ and كَلَّمَا—their number and sense—nature
 of their *post.*—concord with them in number—
 their inflection ... 357—361
- § 118. The اَفْعَل of superiority—its prothesis is pure—
 number of its *post.* ... 362—364
- § 119. Prefixion may be caused by the least connection be-
 tween the 2 *ns.* ... 364
- § 120. Prefixion of one *n.* to another applicable to the same
 thing is allowable when one *n.* contains some
 addition of import—not when the 2 *ns.* are syno-
 nymous, or co-equal in applicability—explana-
 tion of سَعِيْدٌ كَرِيْمٌ ... 364—365
- § 121. Prefixion of the qualified to its *ep.*, and the converse 365—367
- § 122. Prefixion of the named to its name ... 367—368
- § 123. Prefixion of the general to the particular—use of
 حَيٌّ in the sense of *person* and *self*—theory
 that حَيٌّ, اِسْمٌ, and مَقَامٌ are *red.*—its refutation
- § 124. *Ns. pre.* to the *prop.*—the *post. prop.* must not have
 a *cop.* ... 370—372
- § 125. Separation of the *pre.* and *post. ns.* in a case of
 choice by a *reg.* of the *pre.*, and by an oath—in

	Page.
a case of necessity by a word extraneous to the <i>pre.</i> , by an <i>ep.</i> of the <i>pre.</i> , and by a <i>voc.</i> —in poetry by the <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> ...	372—374
§ 126. Suppression of the <i>pre. n.</i> in prose and poetry—cases of suppression—subsequent treatment of the <i>post. n.</i> —preferable alternative when a <i>pre. n.</i> must be supplied with the 1st or 2nd of 2 terms ...	374—377
§ 127. The <i>post. n.</i> sometimes left in the <i>gen.</i> after suppression of the <i>pre.</i> ...	377
§ 128. Suppression of the <i>post.</i> —subsequent treatment of the <i>pre. n.</i> , (1) when a <i>n. pre.</i> to a <i>post. n.</i> like the one suppressed is coupled to it—preferable alternative when the suppression may be from the 1st or 2nd of 2 <i>pre. ns.</i> coupled together—(2) when such a <i>n.</i> is not coupled to it—suppression of 2 <i>pre. ns.</i> , or 3 ...	377—381
§ 129. The final of the <i>n. pre.</i> to the <i>ى</i> of the 1st <i>pers.</i> —of <i>لدى pre.</i> to a <i>pron.</i> —of the abbreviated <i>pre.</i> to the <i>ك</i> of the <i>pron.</i> —inflection of the <i>n. pre.</i> to the <i>ى</i> of the first <i>pers.</i> —vocalization and quiescence of the <i>ى</i> of the 1st <i>pers.</i> ...	381—383
§ 130. Predicament of the 6 unsound <i>ns.</i> when <i>pre.</i> to tho <i>ى</i> ...	383—384
130A. The <i>n.</i> governed in the <i>gen.</i> because of vicinity to a <i>gen.</i> ...	384—386

The Appositives.

§ 131. Apposition—Z's definition of the <i>apposs.</i> —IH's definition—correction of IH's definition—IA's definition—the <i>enunc.</i> and <i>d. 's.</i> of the <i>acc.</i> how excluded from this definition—enumeration of the <i>apposs.</i> —their <i>op.</i> ...	387—389
--	---------

- § 132. The *corrob.*—is *lit.* and *id.*—number of ^٩نفس and ^٩عين when *corrob.* of the *du.* ... 389—390
- § 133. Object of the *corrob.* ... 390—391
- § 134. Repetition of the *p.* or *prop.*—corroboration by simple repetition—the repeated is independent or dependent—the dependent is repeated with its support, or alone—and in the latter case separation is better—the independent is repeated without separation or with it—the *non-repl. p.* is repeated only with what is attached to it, but the *repl.* may be repeated alone—repetition when good—modes of repetition—the *all. seq.*—the *lit. corrob.* is sometimes accompanied by a *con.*, contrary to the *id.* ... 391—394
- § 135. The explicit *n.* is corroborated by its like, and the *pron.* by its like or by the explicit *n.*—detachment or attachment of the 2 *prona.*—the detached *nom. pron.* may corroborate the attached *pron.* of any case—and must corroborate the attached *nom. pron.* before the latter is corroborated by ^٩نفس or ^٩عين, but need not corroborate the attached *acc.* and *gen.* ... 394
- § 136. Nor the attached *nom.* when corroborated by an explicit *n.* other than ^٩نفس and ^٩عين ... 395
- § 137. ^{كُلُّ}كُلُّ, ^{جَمِيعٌ}جَمِيعٌ, and ^{كُلُّ}كُلًّا—^{كُلُّ}كُلًّا—all are *pre.* to the *pron.* of the corroborated, except ^٩اجْمَعُ, which is constructively *pre.*—the first *corrobs.* need a *cop.*—meaning of “first”—^{كُلُّ}كُلًّا used like ^{كُلُّ}كُلًّا used after ^{كُلُّ}كُلُّ, and sometimes without it—dispute as to whether the latter use is rare—corroboration of the *du.* ... 395- 397
- § 138. Corroboration of the *indet.*—suppression of the corroborated—dispute as to allowability of this

	Page.
suppression—separation of the corroborated and <i>corrob.</i>	397—399
§ 139. ^{سأع} اكتع, ^{سأع} اقتع, and ^{سأع} اقتع—order of the <i>id. corrob.</i> when combined—which of them may be used alone—omission of ^{سأع} اقتع by the BB—dispute as to order of ^{سأع} اقتع and ^{سأع} اقتع— ^{سأع} اقتع must pre- cede its 3 sisters—dispute as to order of the 3 after it— <i>exs.</i> of order— <i>ex.</i> of ^{سأع} اقتع not preceded by ^{سأع} اقتع—no dispute as to order of the <i>corrob.</i> down to ^{سأع} اقتع—dispute as to effect of consecu- tive <i>corrob.</i>	399—400
§ 140. The <i>ep.</i> —is general and particular—IH's definition of the particular <i>ep.</i> —the <i>d. s.</i> how excluded from this definition—IM's definition—the <i>ep.</i> is added to diminish or remove the homonymy of the qualified—sometimes merely to explain it ...	400—402
§ 141. Other senses of the <i>ep.</i>	402—404
§ 142. The <i>ep.</i> is <i>deriv.</i> or renderable as such—renderings of the <i>prim.</i> —the <i>prim.</i> generic substantive in apposition with the <i>dem.</i> is not an <i>ep.</i> —dispute as to whether the <i>ep.</i> must be <i>deriv.</i> —it may be <i>prim.</i> —the <i>prim. eps.</i>	404—411
§ 143. The <i>inf. n.</i> used as an <i>ep.</i> —explanations of this use	411—412
§ 144. The <i>prop.</i> used as an <i>ep.</i> —it needs a <i>cop.</i> —its <i>cop.</i> is a <i>pron.</i> —dispute as to the mode of suppressing the <i>pron.</i> when governed in the <i>gen.</i> by a <i>prep.</i> —the <i>prop.</i> must be enunciatory—the requis- itive <i>prop.</i> does not occur as an <i>ep.</i> , but does as an <i>enunc.</i> —it apparently occurs as an <i>ep.</i> by sub- audition of a <i>saying</i> —dispute as to whether such subaudition is necessary in the <i>enunc.</i> ...	412—415
§ 145. The <i>ep.</i> qualifies by the state of the qualified, or of something connected with it—construction	

of the connected *ep.* when intended to govern like the *v.*—and when intended to be merely a *n.*—*prim.* connected *eps.* ... 415—420

- § 146. Concord of the *ep.* with the qualified—the *ep.* agrees with the qualified in case and determinateness or indeterminateness—but is like the *v.* in number and gender—the proper *ep.* agrees with the qualified in case, determinateness or indeterminateness, number, and gender—but the connected *ep.* only in the first 2 predicaments, being like the *v.* in number and gender, except that it may sometimes be a broken *pl.*—exemplification of the concords allowable in the connected *ep.*—the proper *ep.* also is really like the *v.* in number and gender—concord of the *ep.* with the *pre.* or *post.*—*exs.* with ^فكـ—other predicaments of the *ep.*, (1) union of *eps.* with separation of qualifieds, (a) when the *op.* is single—(b) when it is not single—the construction is affected by agreement or difference of the *ops.* in sense and government—and by the speaker's knowledge, or ignorance, of the qualifieds—(2) separation of *eps.* with union of qualifieds, (a) when the qualified is an aggregate—the construction is affected by difference or identity of the *eps.*—(b) when the qualified is single—(3) anacoluthon—ambiguous constructions—conditions of anacoluthon—repetition of the *ep.* not a condition—further conditions—anacoluthon with the ,—this , is parenthetic—breach of concord between the anacoluthic *ep.* and its qualified in determinateness and indeterminateness—anacoluthon with a multiplicity of *eps.*—usual meanings of the anacoluthic *ep.*—these *accs.* and *noms.* belong to the *cat.* of particularization—theory of their transfer from the *voc.*—anacoluthon in commiseration—and after ^ألكن and ^أبل—the conditions of anacoluthon when

	Page.
respected— <i>op.</i> of the anacoluthic <i>ep.</i> —(4) breach of concord between the non-anacoluthic <i>ep.</i> and its qualified in determinateness and inde- terminateness—and in number ...	420—441
§ 147. The <i>pron.</i> neither is qualified, nor qualifies—the proper name does not qualify, but is qualified— the vague is qualified—and the <i>dem.</i> —some con- juncts qualify, but apparently none are qualified —the synarthrous is qualified—and the <i>n. pre.</i> to the <i>det.</i> —the <i>ep.</i> of the <i>dem.</i> and of the <i>voc.</i> ٱى must be made <i>det.</i> by the generic ٱ—some <i>ns.</i> must, and some must not, be qualified—dis- pute as to whether the <i>pron.</i> of the 3rd pers., the <i>ags.</i> of نَمٌ and نُسٌ, and كُم may be qualifi- ed—some <i>ns.</i> may be qualified only in one place, and some everywhere—errors as to qualification of the <i>op. inf. n.</i> and <i>op. act. part.</i> ...	441—448
§ 148. The qualified is more particular than the <i>ep.</i> , or equal to it—meaning of this rule—it is peculiar to the <i>det.</i> —the more particular, when an <i>appos.</i> to the less particular, is a <i>subst.</i> —the <i>ep.</i> why not more particular than the qualified—qualifi- cation of the synarthrous—of the <i>dem.</i> ...	448—451
§ 149. The qualified and <i>ep.</i> ought both to be expressed— suppression of the qualified—condition of sup- pression—dispute as to whether suppression of the qualified or suppression of the conjunct is better— <i>eps.</i> of suppressed unrestricted <i>objs.</i> — opinion that these <i>accs.</i> are not <i>eps.</i> , but <i>ds. s.</i> —refutation of this opinion—total rejection of the qualified—prevalent <i>eps.</i> —suppression of the <i>ep.</i> —transposition of the <i>ep.</i> and qualified—order of <i>eps.</i> when one is a single term, and the other an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prop.</i> —repetition of the <i>ep.</i> —the <i>ep.</i> of the <i>pre.</i> is sometimes governed in the <i>gen.</i> by vicinity to the <i>post.</i> —dispute as to whether	

- agreement of the *pre.* and *post. ns.* in number and gender is a condition of such government ... 451—455
- § 150. The *subst.*—definition given by IH—the *subst.* after $\bar{y}$ how included in this definition—definition given by IM and IHsh—classification—best construction in the case of the *subst.* of blunder—the *subst.* of pure blunder or of forgetfulness not allowable in poetry ... 465—468
- § 151. The *ant.* is subsidiary to the mention of the *subst.*—but is not meant to be rejected—refutation of the theory that it is virtually rejected as regards the sense—and as regards the letter ... 468—469
- § 152. The *op.* of the *ant.* is virtually repeated with the *subst.* ... 469
- § 153. The *subst.* and *ant.* need not agree in determinateness and indeterminateness—but may be both *det.*, both *indet.*, or one *det.* and the other *indet.*—the *indet. subst.* for a *det.* ought to be qualified—application of this rule ... 469—471
- § 154. The *subst.* and *ant.* are both explicit *ns.*, both *prons.*, or one an explicit *n.* and the other a *pron.*—the partial *subst.* and the *subst.* of implication need a pronominal *cofi.*—omission of the *cop.*—theory that the $\bar{y}$ may supply the place of the *pron.*—or that the suppression of the *pron.* may be explained by holding the *subst.* to be treated as a *corrob.*—the total *subst.* does not need a *cop.*—the *interrog.* Hamza prefixed to the *subst.* for an *interrog. n.*—the *v. a subst.* for the *v.*—anacoluthon—order of the *subst.* and other *appos.*—suppression of the *ant.* ... 471—478
- § 155. Syndesis—the *synd. expl.*—the other *appos.* how excluded by this definition—the *synd. expl.* must be *prim.*—its concord with the *ant.*—dispute as to whether the *synd. expl.* and its *ant.* may be *indets.*—the *synd. expl.*, being like the *ep.*, must contain the generic $\bar{y}$ when its *ant.* is a *dem.*

- but is allowed by S to be anarthrous when the *dem.* is a *voc.*—and by S and Zd to consist of 2 *sings.* coupled together when the *dem.* is a *du.*—the latter construction disallowed by S, Zd, and others in the *ep.*—but allowed by S when the *du.* is a *voc.* ... 478—481
- § 156. The *synd. expl.* how distinguishable from the *subst.*—either allowable—the *synd. expl.* necessary—the *subst.* necessary—differences between them—R's theory of their identity—explanation of their alleged differences—*exs.* where either is admissible—suppression of the *ant.* ... 481—491
- § 157. Definition of the coupled—defence of the definition—the coupled is separated from its *ant.* by a *con.*—the *ep.* is sometimes coupled to an *ep.* ... 491—492
- § 158. Coupling to the attached *nom. pron.*—to the detached *nom. pron.*, and attached or detached *acc. pron.*—to the *gen. pron.*—discussion as to whether the *gen.* is coupled to the *gen.*, or the *op.* and *gen.* to the *op.* and *gen.*—and whether the coupled is governed in the *gen.* by the first *op.* or the second—repetition of the genitival *op.* not necessary in a case of necessity—nor, according to some, in a case of choice ... 492—498

CHAPTER V.—THE UNINFLECTED NOUN.

- § 159. Definition of uninflectedness—definitions of the *uninfl. n.*—its predicament—it is permanent or accidental—the cause of its uninflectedness according to Z—and according to IM—when the *pre. n.* gains uninflectedness from the *uninfl. post.*—allowable uninflectedness of the vague *n.* of time *pre.* to a *prop.*—permanent uninflectedness of *ns.* necessarily *pre.* to a *prop.*—terminations of the *uninfl. n.*—names of the terminations—distribution of the terminations—classification of the *uninfl. ns.* ... 499—505

THE PRONOUNS.

- § 160. The *pron.* is called *emt.* by the KK—its definition—its exponent—positions where it relates to an expression posterior literally and in natural order—choice of exponent when determined by proximity—the explicit *n.* substituted for the *pron.*—the *pron.* is (1) attached, (a) prominent or (b) latent, (2) detached ... 506—511
- § 161. The *pron.* is *uninfl.*—its terminations—reason of its uninflectedness—some *prons.* are common to 2 or more cases—there are *prons.* for all 3 cases—which are attached, and which detached—assortment of the *prons.* with reference to case and attachment or detachment—meanings of each sort—expressions constituted for the attached *nom. prons.* of each *pers.*—and for the remaining sorts of *prons.* of each *pers.*—aggregate of words and meanings—the ت—its variations—the ت in the variations of اَيْنَكَ^{اَئِنَكَ}—attached *nom. pron.* of the 3rd *pers.*—the ت in فَرَبْتَ^{فَرَبْتِ} and فَرَبْتَا^{فَرَبْتَا} a *p.*, not a *pron.*—the ا, و, and ن—the و sometimes used for irrational objects—the ا, و, and ن seldom *ps.*—the ي—attached *nom. pron.* in the *aor.*, *imp.*, and *prohib.*—in the *eps.*, i. e. *act.* and *pass. parts.* and assimilate *ep.*, and in the verbal *ns.* and *advs.*—detached *nom. pron.*—اَنَا^{اَنَا} نحن^{نَحْنُ}—اَنْتَ^{اَنْتَ} اَنْتِ^{اَنْتِ} اَنْتُمْ^{اَنْتُمْ} اَنْتُنَّ^{اَنْتُنَّ}—هو^{هُوَ} هي^{هِيَ}—their, and ي^{يَ} vocalized, elided, made quiescent, or doubled—*du.* and *pl.* of the detached *nom. pron.* of the 3rd *pers.*—the detached *nom. prons.* are common to the *pret.*, *aor.*, *imp.*, and *eps.*—expressions constituted for the attached *acc.* and *gen. prons.* of each *pers.*—vowel of the *g* in the *sing. masc.*—impletion, slurring, or elision of this vowel after a mobile—slurring or impletion of the vowel

	after a quiescent—summary of the <i>dial. vars.</i> in the <i>z</i> of the <i>sing. masc.</i> after a Kasra or quiescent <i>ي</i> —impletion, slurring, or elision of the vowel of the <i>z</i> in the <i>sing. masc.</i> when a soft letter is elided before the <i>z</i> —vowel of the <i>z</i> in the <i>du.</i> and <i>pl.</i> —quiescence or vocalization of the <i>م</i> of the <i>pl.</i> after the <i>z</i> pronounced with Kasr, and impletion of its vowel when it is followed by a mobile—summary of the states of the <i>م</i> after the <i>z</i> pronounced with Kasr—states of the <i>م</i> after the <i>z</i> pronounced with Damm—detached <i>acc. pron.</i> —its constitution— <i>gen. pron.</i> —it must be attached, and is exactly like the attached <i>acc.</i> —the <i>ي</i> , <i>ك</i> , and <i>ز</i> when <i>objs.</i> and when <i>post.</i> —the <i>ك</i> in <i>زيدك زيداً</i> , when a <i>p.</i> and when a <i>post. n.</i> — <i>pl.</i> of magnification— <i>pl. masc.</i> for <i>sing. masc.</i> or <i>sing. fem.</i> — <i>sing.</i> for <i>pl.</i> —the <i>pron.</i> treated like the <i>dem.</i> ...	511—532
§ 162.	<i>اِيَّايَ</i> and its variations ...	532—533
§ 163.	Detachment of <i>nom.</i> or <i>acc. pron.</i> not allowable except when attachment is impossible—rules for attachment and detachment when <i>nom.</i> or <i>acc. pron.</i> is governed (1) by a <i>v.</i> —(2) by something else ...	533—539
§ 164.	Rules for attachment and detachment when 2 <i>prons.</i> follow an <i>op.</i> , (1) when the <i>op.</i> is a <i>v.</i> , (a) if the 2nd <i>pron.</i> be an <i>appos.</i> —(b) if the 2nd <i>pron.</i> be not an <i>appos.</i> —(2) when the <i>op.</i> is a <i>n.</i> —attachment or detachment of pronominal <i>pred.</i> of <i>كَلِّ</i> , etc. ...	540—544
§ 165.	No <i>pron.</i> latent except attached <i>nom.</i> —cause of its latency—attached <i>nom. pron.</i> when not apparent— <i>ag.</i> , explicit or pronominal, when not apparent— <i>xplanation</i> of instance where <i>ag.</i> of <i>أَفْعَلْ</i>	

seems to be apparent as a detached *pron.*—*ag.*
when apparent as an explicit *n.* or detached
pron.—explanation of instances where *ag.* of

أَفْعَلٌ seems to be apparent as an explicit *n.*, and
ag. of نَفْعَلٌ as a detached *pron.* of the 2nd *pers.*
or as an explicit *n.* ... 544—546

166. Form of detached *nom. pron.* intervenes between
inch. and *enunc.* before and after prefixion of
their *lit. ops.*—is named distinctive by the BB,
and support by the KK—the ج of inception is
prefixed to it—the *inch.* ought to be *det.*, and the
enunc. synarthrous—the distinctive remains fixed
in case, but varies in number, gender, and
pers.—is introduced where the *enunc.* is anar-

throns, but an أَفْعَلٌ of superiority—conditions of
the *pron.* named distinctive and support—its
import—some Arabs make it an *inch.*, and what
follows it its *enunc.* ... 546—551

- § 167. The *pron.* of the *case* or *fact*—named *pron.* of the
unknown by the KK—is (1) attached, (a) pro-
minent or (b) latest, (2) detached—when *fem.*—
may not be suppressed, except when an *acc.*—

exs. of its suppression when *sub.* of اِنَّ—its
irregularities—the *expos. prop.* after it must
have both its terms expressed—must be nominal,
except when an annuller of inchoation is prefixed
to the *pron.*—and must be enunciatory, except

when *pred.* of the contracted اِنَّ ... 551—554

- § 168. The *prop.* in رَجُلًا، رَجُلًا، and نَعِمَ رَجُلًا ... 554

- § 169. The *pron.* after لَوْلَا and عَسَى —analysis of لَوْلَا
followed by a *gen. pron.*—and of عَسَى followed
by an *acc. prop.* ... 555—557

- § 170. The *ن* of *protection* or *support*—why introduced into the *v.*—inseparable from all paradigms of the *v.* except the 5 paradigms of the *aor.* containing the *ن* of inflection—may be elided with the *ن* of inflection, but not with the *ن* of the *pron.*, nor with the single or double *ن* of corroboration—dispute whether the elided be the *ن* of protection or the *ن* of inflection—the *ن* of the *pron.*, or the single or double *ن* of corroboration not elided with the *ن* of protection—the *ن* of protection elided with the *ن* of the *pron.* by poetic license—methods allowable with the *ن* of inflection—expression or omission of the *ن* of protection with *عَسَى* and *لَيْسَ*—with the *أَفْعَلُ* of wonder—with verbal *ns.*—with *لَعَلَّ*—with *كُنْ* and *لَكِنْ*, *أَنْ*, *إِنْ*—*قَطْ* and *قَدْ*, *عَنْ*, *مِنْ*—*لَيْتَ*—*بَجَلْ*—*لَدُنْ* ... 557—562
- § 170A. Degrees of particularity in the *prons.*—the more particular prevails over the less ... 562

THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

- § 171. Definitions—the *dems.* contain the sense of *vs.*—demonstrate *orig.* only sensible and visible objects—their numbers, genders, and cases—the *sing. masc.* used for the *sing. fem.* or *du. fem.*—similar usage in the *pron.*—the *dems.* are *uninfl.*—their terminations—reason of their uninflectedness—dispute on the uninflectedness of the *du.*—similar dispute on the *du.* of the conjunct—*ذُنْ*, *أَلَذَانِ*, and the like are *quasi-*

du. ns., not real *das.*—ذَانِ , تَانِ , اَلَّذَانِ , and اَلَّتَانِ occur in all 3 cases—the *dems.* are vague, and must therefore be explained by an *ep.* when they are likely to confuse ... 563—570

- § 172. The ك of allocation is affixed to them to notify [by its variations] the number and gender of the person addressed—it is a *p.*, not a *pron.*—does not indicate person, but only allocation—varies with the number and gender of the person addressed—aggregate of *dems.* so formed—the ك is invariable in one *dial.*—ذَلِكَ for ذَلِكُمْ 570—572

- § 173. The ل is inserted before the ك to indicate the *distance* of the demonstrated—distinction in meaning between ذَا , ذَاكَ , and ذَلِكْ—some make no distinction between ذَاكَ and ذَلِكْ—numbers and genders of the *dems.* importing *distance*—reduplication of the ن in ذَانِ and ذَانِ—and in ذَانِكَ and ذَانِكَ—the ل when omitted—always omitted in the *dial.* of Tamim 572—674

- § 174. The premonitory *p.* هَا is prefixed to the *dems.*—هَذَا and its variations—هَذَاكَ and its variations—the هَا is not part of the *dem.*—explanation of هَذَا as an *acc.* ... 574—576

- § 175. *Dems. of place*—هَـنَا and هُنَا—هَـنَا is always used as an *adv.*—and so هُنَا—the ك of allocu-

tion is affixed, and the premonitory هَا prefixed, to هُنَا and هُنَا, but not to تَمَّ — and the ل is inserted—distinction in meaning between هُنَا, هُنَا, and هُنَا — تَمَّ and هُنَا are like هُنَا in meaning— هُنَا, هُنَا, and هُنَا sometimes denote *time*—dispute as to whether they are then *pre.* to the *prop.* ... 576—578

THE CONJUNCTS.

§ 176. اَلَّذِي and its variations—the *sing.*—reduplication or elision of the ي in the *sing.*—tho ل and ل in all 3 numbers are *red.*—added to impart the form of the *det.*—the *du.*—reduplication of the ن in the *du.*—similar reduplication in the *du.* of the *dems.*—elision of the ن in the *du.*—dispute as to whether the *du.* are *infl.* or *uninfl.*—اَلَّذَانِ and اَلَّذَانِ occur in all 3 cases—the *pl. masc.*—اَلَّذِي written with one ل —elision of the ن from اَلَّذِي and اَلَّذِي—other forms of the *pl. masc.*—tho *pl. fem.*—conjuncts common to all genders and numbers—اَلْ—مَا—أَلْ—أَي expressly or constructively *pre.* to a *det.*—sometimes femininized, dualized, and pluralized—the Ta'ī تُو—its *dial. vars.*—ذَا—the conjuncts, with some exceptions, are *uninfl.*—their terminations—reason of their uninflectedness—the conjunct ought to be *infl.*—the *conj.* has not a place in inflection—nor have the conjunct and its *conj.* together—the conjuncts are vague

§ 177. Definition of the conjunct—its *conj.*, except the *conj.*

of $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —the *rel.*—the *conj.* is a verbal, nominal, *cond.*, or adverbial *prop.*—this *prop.* must be enunciatory—and needs a *cop.*—the *pers.* of the

rel. pron.—the *conj.* of $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —it is constructively a verbal *prop.* containing a *rel. pron.*—its *o. f.*—it

receives the inflection properly belonging to $\hat{\text{أَل}}$

—anomalous *conjs.* of $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —they prove $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ not to be a *p.* of determination, but are peculiar to poetry—the *prim.* synarthrous substantive as a conjunct—the *conj.* or part of it does not precede the conjunct—nor does the *conj.* or any thing depending upon it govern what precedes the conjunct—nor does the *conj.* depend upon what precedes the conjunct—nor is the conjunct separated from the *conj.*, or part of the *conj.* from part, by an *appos.* or *enunc.* of, or *exc.* from, the conjunct—in poetry a conjunct occurs coupled to a conjunct before the *conj.*—sometimes a conjunct is separated from its *conj.* by a *reg.* of the *conj.*—such separation is not allowable

with a conjunct *p.*, nor with the conjunct $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —part of the *conj.* may be separated from part by something coupled to the *conj.*—part of the *conj.* precedes part—suppression of the conjunct

n. other than $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —of the *conj.* of the conjunct

n. other than $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ —the *rel.* of $\hat{\text{أَل}}$ may not be suppressed—nor may one of two *rels.* when combined in the *conj.*—suppression of the *rel.* in other cases

590—606

§ 178. أَلْأَنَّى is 3 connective to the qualification of *deta.*

by *props.*—the fact announced by the *conj. prop.* ought to be known to the person addressed

—distinction between the *conj.* and the attribute—**الَّذِي** and its *sem.* are lightened by elision of the **ي** alone or with the preceding vowel—the **ن** is elided from its *du.* and *pl.*—its *sing.* is used to indicate the *pl.*—number of the *rel. pron.* in that case 606—608

- § 179. **الَّذِي** has a wider range in the process of enunciation than **أَلْ**—an *enunc.* is not made to **أَلْ** except from a *n.* in a verbal *prop.*—conditions requisite in the *v.*—enunciation is a process instituted for examination and exercise of the student—when permissible—method of effecting it—concord of the conjunct in number and gender with the *n.* made an *enunc.*—latency or detachment of the *pron.* governed in the *nom.* by the *qual.* occurring as *conj.* of **أَلْ**—conditions of the *n.* that an *enunc.* is made from—enunciation when disallowed 608—614

- § 180. **مَا**—the **مَا** that follows an *indet.* to import *vagueness* and *corroboration of indeterminateness*—**مَا** denotes mostly the *irrational*, sometimes the *rational*, often the *qualities of the rational*, sometimes the *unknown in quiddity and essence.* 614—619

- § 181. Its **|** is subject to conversion and elision—conversion of the **|** — **مَهْمَا** — **مَهْمَا** — **مَهْمَا** is simple, not compounded—its meanings—elision of the **|** with retention or elision of the Fatha—the **|** is elided in interrogation, but expressed in enunciation—the **|** is expressed in interrogation in extraordinary readings and poetic licenses, not in ordinary readings—the **|** is not elided when the *interrog.* **مَا** is compounded with **لَا** — **مَا** when written conjoined and when disjoined 619—627

- § 182. ^أمِنْ — ^أمِنْ as a complete *indet.* or *red.*— ^أمِنْ mostly denotes the *rational*, sometimes the *irrational*— ^أمِنْ and ^أمَا are literally *sing. masc.*, but are applied to all numbers and genders—observance of the letter is more frequent in expressions made to accord with them than observance of the sense—observance preferable or necessary—precedence of, and reversion to, observance of the letter when the two observances are combined— ^أمِنْ when written disjoined, and when conjoined

627—633

- § 183. In interrogation with ^أمِنْ about a mentioned rational *indet.* 3 methods are allowable in pause upon ^أمِنْ, (1) to imitate in ^أمِنْ the inflection of the *indet.* and the signs of its number and gender—the letters of prolongation are added in the *sing. masc.*—imitation of the inflection is omitted in the *sing. fem.* and *pl. fem.*—the ن before the ت is made quiescent in the *du. fem.*, and sometimes in the *sing. fem.*, but is sometimes mobilized in the *du. fem.*—(2) to add the letters of prolongation, imitating only the inflection appropriate to the *sing. masc.*, whatever be the number and gender of the *indet.*—(3) to put ^أمِنْ alone in every state without imitation—imitation allowed by Y in continuity— ^أمِنْ is *infl.* in some *dials.*—the signs mentioned are affixed only at the end of the sentence—question how put when the rational and irrational are combined—methods allowable in interrogation with ^أمِنْ about a mentioned rational *det.*—and about a *rel. ep.* of a proper name

634—643

- § 184. ^وأَيُّ — ^كأَيُّ as a qualified *indet.* — ^وأَيُّ when decidedly aprothetic — ^وأَيُّ is *infl.*, except in vocation — the *interrog.* or *cond.* ^كأَيُّ is *infl.* unrestrictedly — the conjunct ^وأَيُّ has 4 states — the conjunct ^وأَيُّ when *infl.*, and when *uninfl.* upon Damm — conditions of the *op.* of the conjunct ^وأَيُّ ... 643—646
- § 185. In interrogation with ^كأَيُّ about a mentioned *indet.*, 2 methods are allowable, (1) to imitate in ^كأَيُّ the inflection of the *indet.* and the signs of its number and gender—reason and pause why required as conditions of imitation with ^أمَنْ, and not with ^كأَيُّ — (2) to restrict oneself in continuity to inflecting ^كأَيُّ in the *sing.*, whatever be the number and gender of the *indet.* — the vowels and other signs affixed to ^أمَنْ and ^كأَيُّ in the state of imitation are imitative alliterations, these words being in the place of a *nom.* by inchoation—in interrogation with ^كأَيُّ about *dets.* what follows it is not imitated—the *n.* is sometimes imitated without a question—imitation is allowable, according to this *dial.*, in *dets.* after ^أمَنْ or ^كأَيُّ ... 646—648
- § 186. The *dems.* as conjuncts — مَاذَا — ذَا ... 648—651

THE VERBAL NOUNS AND EJACULATIONS.

- § 187. Definition of the verbal *n.* given by IH—definition given by IM and Fk—expressions excluded by the latter definition—mood and tense indicated by the verbal *n.*—the verbal *ns.* are *uninfl.*—

their terminations—reason of their uninflectedness—meaning of the term “verbal *ns.*”—object of using them—they are shorter and more intensive than *vs.*—what they indicate—why they are not called *vs.*—their *o. fs.*—they are all transferred from original *inf. ns.*, from *inf. ns. orig. ej.*, from *adv.*, or from *prep.* and

gens.—**أَمِين** or **أَمِين**—its forms—the *prep.*

and *gen.* why called a verbal *n.*—the verbal *n.* has no place in inflection—it is not in the place of the *nom.*—it has lost its original place in inflection—nor is it in the place of the *acc.*—it is transferred from its original meaning to the meaning of the *v.* in the same way as proper names are transferred—it denotes the *meaning*, not merely the *expression*, of the *v.*—the *v.*

sometimes becomes a verbal *n.*—**كُذِّبَ** and

كُذِّبَ عَلَيْكَ—government of the verbal *ns.*—the

ب is often *red.* in their *obj.*—dispute as to whether they may be preceded by their *accs.*—the verbal *n.* is not *pre.*—the *aor.* is not governed in the *subj.* in the *correl.* of the requisitive verbal *n.*, but is governed in the *apoc.*—the verbal *ns.* are mostly *i. q.* the *imp.*—are more intensive and *corrob.* in meaning than the corresponding *ns.*—and, when enunciatory, contain the sense of *wonder*—they have no sign for the attached *pron.* governed by them in the *nom.*—affixion of the **ك** of allocution and of the Tanwīn to them is restricted to hearsay—the **ك** attached to them is sometimes a *n.* governed in the *gen.*, and sometimes a *p.* of allocution—according to the majority, the Tanwīn affixed to them indicates *indeterminateness*—the verbal *ns.* in the state of determination belong to the

class of *n.* made *det.* by the ^{أَلْ} denoting *knowledge*—according to ISk and Jb, the Tanwin affixed to verbal *ns.* indicates that they are continuous with what follows them, not paused.

upon—classification of the verbal *ns.*—^{أَرَبْ} —

وَيْكٌ — وَيْ — رَاهَا — رَا — بَجَلٌ — قَطَا — قَدْ

وَيْ كَانٌ or وَيْكَ أَنْ —

... 652—674

- § 188. ^{أَرَبْ} —ambiguous constructions and various versions ... 674—676

- § 189. ^{أَرَبْ} —is made uniform by the Hijāsts in all numbers and genders, but conjugated by the Banū Tamīm as an *imp. v.*—is *trans.* and *intrans.*—

أَهْلَهُ and أَهْلَهُم — هَلَّمَ لَكَ

... 676—678

- § 190. هَا —its *dial. vars.*—three of these are aplastic *vs.* ... 679—680

- § 191. حَيْهَلٌ — its *dial. vars.*—forms peculiar to pause

— حَيْهَلٌ —sense and government of حَيْهَلٌ —

its assumption of the *pron.* — حَيْهَلُكَ — حَيَّ

and هَلْ why combined — حَيَّ used alone —

هَلْ or هَلْ used alone

... 680—684

- § 192. بَلْ is (1) a verbal *n.*—(2) an *inf. n.* — بَلْ —

(3) a *n. i. q.* كَيْفَ —case of what follows it—nature of its Fath—*ex.* with versions exhibiting

all 3 constructions — مِنْ بَلْ or مِنْ بَلْ —

occurs in tradition—different versions of

this tradition—(4) a *prep.* ...

... 684—686

§ 193. **فَعَالٍ** — it is (1) an *imp.* verbal *n.*—universal, or, at all events, frequent, in the *tril.*—its occurrence in the Revelation—it is rare in the *quad.*, being then **فَعَالٍ** — refutation of the theory that it is made to deviate from the verbal *imp.* for the sake of *intensiveness* and is *fem.*—it is intensive, however, like all verbal *ns.*—so are **فَعَالٍ** the *inf.* *n.* and **فَعَالٍ** the *ep.*—(2) an *inf.* *n.*—refutation of the theory that it is made to deviate from a *det. fem. inf. n.*—there is no evidence of determinateness in **فَعَالٍ** — nor in other instances of this **فَعَالٍ** —vacillation of the GG about the gender of all the measures of **فَعَالٍ**, *imp.*, *inf. n.*, *ep.*, and proper name—(3) a *fem. ep.*—this *ep.* does not occur in the *masc.*, is always used without a qualified, and is of 2 kinds, (a) used only in the *voc.*, except by poetic license—this kind, like the *imp.* **فَعَالٍ**, may be regularly formed from every *tril. att.* completely plastic *v.*—and does not occur as a generic proper name—(b) used in the *non-voc.*, (a) mostly as generic proper names, and therefore *det.*—(b) sometimes merely as *eps.*—(4) a personal proper name of a *fem.*—this kind of proper name is coined—difference between it and the generic proper name mentioned in 3, b, a—it is always *fem.*—but is sometimes used as a name for a man ...

687—698

§ 194. **فَعَالٍ** when an *imp.*, *inf. n.*, or *ep.*, has its **ل** pronounced with Kasr—unless it be used as a personal proper name, in which case, if a name for a *masc.*, it is declined as a diptote, and some-

- times as a triptote, and, if a name for a *fem.*, it is treated like **فَعَالٍ** when a personal proper name—the **ل** in the *imp.* is pronounced with Fath by the Banu Asad—the *inf. ns.* and *eps.* are *uninfl.* by common consent—the generic proper names are *uninfl.*—the personal proper names of *fems.* have 3 *dial. vars.* ... 698—701
- § 195. **هَيَاتٌ** — its *dial. vars.*—its number—reasons for the different vowels of the **ت**—the final how written when pronounced with Damm ... 701—703
- § 196. **شَتَانٌ** — requires 2 *ags.*—**شَتَانٌ مَا** is allowable —and **شَتَانٌ مَا بَيْنَ**, though it is less frequent and chaste—but not **شَتَانٌ بَيْنَ** ... 703—706
- § 197. **أَفٌ** — its *dial. vars.*—its final vowel, and its Tanwīn ... 706—707
- § 198. These *ns.* are *det.* and *indet.*—signs of the *det.* and *indet.*—classification of these *ns.* as (1) always *det.*—(2) always *indet.*—**أَيُّهُ** or **أَيُّهُ** and **هَيْه** — **أَيُّهُ** — (3) *det.* and *indet.* — **أَيُّهُ** — the Tanwīn affixed to these *ns.*—theory that the verbal *ns.* are all *det.* ... 707—709
- § 199. *Adv.* and *preps.* as verbal *ns.*—their *gen.* is a *pron.* —*pers.* of the *pron.* — **أَدَيْكَ**, **عِنْدَكَ**, and **مَكَانَكَ** — **أَمَامَكَ** and **دُرْأَدَكَ** — **دُونَكَ** — question whether **مَكَانَكَ** and the like are verbal *ns.* — **عَلَيْكَ** and **إِلَيْكَ** — **عَلَى** and **إِلَى** — an explicit *n.* governed in the *gen.* by **عَلَى** — dis-

pute whether *instigation* by *adv.* of place and
by *preps.* is regular or restricted to hearsay—
position of the *pron.* attached to these words—
their *aq.*—case of the *corrob.* after them ... 709—713

§ 200. Definition of the *ej.*—classification of the *ej.s.*—these expressions why named *ej.s.*—they are treated as words, and coordinated with *ns.*—the Tanwin affixed to some of them—they are all *uninfl.*—reason of their uninflectedness—when they occur constructed, they may be *infl.* or *uninfl.*, in-

flection being frequent with **أُ**, and necessary with Tanwīn—*ej.* imitating the sounds of human beings, dumb animals, or inanimate substances—*ej.* wherewith brutes are cried to—*ej.* indicative of the speaker's mental states—

ويلمة or ويلمة — ويت , ويس , ويس , ويس

— ویک^{۸۰} or ویکان^{۸۱} or ویک^{۸۲} ... 713—720

THE UNINFLECTED ADVERBS.

§ 201. Some *adv.* are *uninfl.*—their terminations—the *adv.* cut off from prothesis—enumeration of the *adv.* so cut off—others may not be added by analogy—the *post. n.* or *prop.* when suppressible—reason of the uninflectedness of the *adv.* out

off from prothesis—and of **أَيْ**, **أَيْ**, and **أَيْ**

—reason of the inflectedness of ^عبعض and ^ككل when the *post.* is suppressed—these *advs.* are preferably *uninfl.*, but allowably *infl.* when pronounced with Tanwīn as a compensation for the *post.*—there is no difference in sense between their *infl.* and *uninfl.* forms—contrary opinion that their *infl.* forms do not imply the sense of prothesis—these *ns.* are *uninfl.* upon Damm in

1 state, and *infl.* in 3 — ^{مِنْ} ^{أَوَّلِ} — ^{مِنْ} ^{تَدَامٍ} —
 Tanwin with the sign of the *nom.* or *acc.* in
 these *adv.*—they are named “finals”—^{كُلٌّ} and
^{بَعْضٌ}, when cut off from prothesis, are not so
 named—^{عَلٌ} — it is *uninfl.* upon Damm or *infl.*
 —its *dial. vars.*—the ^ي of ^{عَلٍ} is elided in ^{عَلٌ} —
 vowel of the ^ف in ^{عَلُو} —and of the ^ل in ^{عَلُو} —
 the finals why *uninfl.* upon Damm—^{لَا} ^{غَيْرُ} or
^{لَيْسَ} ^{غَيْرُ} and ^{حَسْبُ} are treated like the *adv.*
 cut off from prothesis—^{غَيْرُ} — constructions
 allowable with ^{غَيْرُ} preceded by ^{لَيْسَ} — ^{لَا} ^{غَيْرُ}
 — ^{غَيْرُ} is assimilated to the final *adv.*—but
 only after ^{لَا} and ^{لَيْسَ} — ^{غَيْرُ} after ^{لَيْسَ} is i.q.
^{أَلَا} — ^{حَسْبُ} — it is used as an *indet. ep.*—and
 as a *prim. substantive*—objection to its being
 a verbal *n.*—^{حَسْبُ} — its *post.* why suppressed
 — ^{حَسْبُ} why *uninfl.* upon Damm—*adv. pre.*
 to *props.*—the *n.* of *time* is generally *pre.* to the
 verbal *prop.*, sometimes to the nominal—the *n.*
 of *time*, when not in sense an *adv.* to the *inf. n.*
 of the *prop.*, is not used except with an infinitival
p. before the *prop.* — ^{ذُو} — ^{أَيَّةٌ} and ^{رَيْتُ} —
 order of the two terms of the *prop.* immediately
 following ^{حَيْثُ} and ^{أَذَا} when one of these terms
 is a *v.*—^{غَيْرُ} and ^{مِثْلُ} are sometimes *pre.* to a

prop. headed by an infinitival *p.*—the *adv.* also are said by the KK to be *pre.* to ^{٢٤}أَنْ and ^{٢٤}أَنْ—alleged-qualifiability of the *adv. pre.* to *props.*—determinateness or indeterminateness of this *adv.*—the *n.* of *time* or ^{٢٤}حَيْثُ, even if not an *adv.*, is *pre.*

to the *prop.*—^{٢٤}يَوْمَئِذٍ, ^{٢٤}حِينَئِذٍ, and ^{٢٤}سَاعَتَئِذٍ — ^{٢٤}أَنْ — the *post. prop.* may not contain a *pron.*

relating to the *pre. adv.*—the *cop.* when necessary in the *prop.* following an *adv.*—anomalous insertion of a *cop.* in the *prop. post.* to an *adv.*—the *adv.* necessarily *pre.* to *props.* must be *uninfl.* —the *sing.* and *pl.*, but not the *du.*, of the *adv.*

allowably *pre.* to the *prop.* or to ^{٢٤}أَنْ may be *uninfl.* upon *Fath*—so may ^{٢٤}مِثْلُ with ^{٢٤}مَا — and

^{٢٤}غَيْرُ with ^{٢٤}أَنْ or ^{٢٤}أَنْ ... 721—744

- § 202. ^{٢٤}حَيْثُ or ^{٢٤}حَيْثُ is *uninfl.*—its terminations—^{٢٤}حَيْثُ is *infl.* by some—its meaning—how parsed—it does not occur as *sub.* of ^{٢٤}أَنْ — is always *pre.* to a *prop.*, more often verbal—extraordinary prefixion to a single term—more extraordinary prefixion to a suppressed *prop.*—^{٢٤}حَيْثُ, when *pre.* to a single term, is *infl.* by some—^{٢٤}حَيْثُ — proof that ^{٢٤}حَيْثُ sometimes denotes *time* ... 744—748

- § 203. ^{٢٤}مَنْ and ^{٢٤}مَنْ — are peculiar to *time*—their meanings when they are *ns.*—what follows them—how parsed when followed by a *n.* in the *gen.*—are *ns.* when governing a single *n.* in the *nom.*, or when followed by a *prop.*—how parsed when followed

by a *n.* in the *nom.*—or by a verbal or nominal *prop.*—are *uninfl.*—reason of their uninflected.

ness—their terminations—the *o. f.* of ^أمَد ... 748—752

- § 204. ^أإِذَا is (1) a *n.* denoting *past time*—how used—(2) a *n.* denoting *future time*—(3) causative—a *p.* or *adv.*, according to different opinions—*exs.* in favor of the 1st opinion—(4) denotative of *suddenness of occurrence*—generally occurring after ^أبَيْنَا or ^أبَيْنَا and variously said to be an *adv.* of *place* or *time*, a *p.* denoting *suddenness of occurrence*, and a *red. p.*—2 other meanings mentioned for ^أإِذَا, in both of which it appears to be a *p.*—^أإِذَا is always *pre.* to a *prop.*, nominal or verbal—but is not prefixed to a *n.* followed by a *pret. v.*—suppression of one term of the *prop.*—^أإِذَا ذَاكَ and ^أإِذَا نَحْنُ — and of the whole *prop.*—^أإِذَا or ^أإِذَا and ^أإِذَا يَوْمَئِذٍ — ^أإِذَا does not denote *condition* unless it be restrained by ^أإِذَا from prefixion—^أإِذَا — a *p.* or *adv.*, according to different opinions—its government of the *apoc.* is rare, but not a poetic license—^أإِذَا (1) denotes *suddenness of occurrence*—this differs from the *cond.* ^أإِذَا in being peculiar to nominal *props.*, in not needing a *correl.*, nor occurring at the beginning of the sentence, and in meaning the *present*—and is variously said to be a *p.*, an *adv.* of *place*, and an *adv.* of *time*—its *op.*, if it be an *adv.*—the *enunc.* with it—^أإِذَا itself the *enunc.*—^أإِذَا خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا — ^أإِذَا regarded as an

adv. of time, but still apparently made *enunc.* of a concrete *n.* — إِذَا هُوَ هِيَ or إِيَّاهَا — this إِذَا is used like the ف in the *correl.* of the condition — (2) denotes *something else* — this differs from the 1st إِذَا in being an *adv.* of the *future*, in implying the sense of *condition*, and in being peculiar to prefixion to verbal *props.* — tense of the *v.* after it — the *cond.* إِذَا is not prefixed to an *inch.*, whether the *inch.* be, or be not, followed by a *v.* — and does not govern the *apoc.*, except in poetry — exclusion of this إِذَا from *adverbiality*, *futurity*, and *conditionality* — when no longer *cond.*, it may still be followed by 2 *props.* — what governs it in the *acc.*, whether it be *cond.* or *non-cond.* — the ف in the *correl.* of the *non-cond.* إِذَا — the *cond.* إِذَا may have for its *apod.* a nominal *prop.* without a ف — and be followed by a nominal *prop.* devoid of *v.* — حَتَّى إِذَا — إِذَا and إِذَا denoting *suddenness of occurrence* in the *correl.* of بَيْنَا and بَيْنَهُمَا — formation of بَيْنَا and بَيْنَهُمَا — sense and government of بَيْنَ in them — كَلَّمَا — tense of the *v.* after بَيْنَا , بَيْنَهُمَا , and كَلَّمَا — كَلَّمَا and كَلَّ here may be *uninfl.* — construction of بَيْنَا , بَيْنَهُمَا , and كَلَّمَا with their 2 *props.* — إِذَا and إِذَا why prefixed to the *correl.* of بَيْنَا and بَيْنَهُمَا — كَلَّ and بَيْنَ in كَلَّمَا

and ^{أَإِذَا} may be *infl.*—parsing of ^{إِذَا} and ^{إِذَا} in the *correl.* of ^{بَيْنَا} and ^{بَيْنَا}—and of ^{إِذَا} in the *correl.* of ^{إِذَا}, ^{لَمَّا}, and ^{إِنْ}—^{إِذَا} denoting *suddenness of occurrence* elsewhere than in the *correl.* of ^{بَيْنَا} and ^{بَيْنَا}—^{بَيْنَا} may be *pre.* to an *inf. n.*, contrary to ^{بَيْنَا}

752—778

§ 205. ^{لَدُنْ} ^{غُدُوَّةٌ}—its *dial. vars.*—its government—^{لَدُنْ}—no *n.* but ^{غُدُوَّةٌ} is governed in the *acc.* after ^{لَدُنْ}—^{لَدُنْ}—^{لَدُنْ}—difference between it and ^{لَدُنْ}—and between it and ^{عِنْدَ}—there is no proof of its uninflectedness—its !

778—784

§ 206. ^{أَلْ}—is an *adv.* of time, *uninfl.* upon *Fath*—the ^{أَلْ} prefixed to it—how it is made *det.*—reason of its uninflectedness—it is sometimes *infl.*—its *vars.*—^{أَمْسٌ}—its termination when it means a *specified day*, and is not *pre.*, nor *synarthrous*, nor formed into a *du.* or broken *pl.* or *dim.*—its inflection when it is used as a name for a man—and when it means *some day or other of the past days*, or is *pre.* or *synarthrous*, or is formed into a *du.* or broken *pl.* or *dim.*—its uninflectedness when it is *anarthrous*, and means a *specified day*, but is used as an *adv.*—^{تَطُ}—its usages—it is *uninfl.*—reason of its uninflectedness—its terminations—its *dial. vars.*—^{عَرَضٌ} or ^{عَرَضٌ}—its usages—when it is *infl.* and when *uninfl.*—reason of its uninflectedness—its terminations—^{لَمَّا}—it is a *p.*—or an *adv.*

of *time*—reason of its uninflectedness—attempted refutation of its nominality—the *v.* following it—its *correl.*—apparent omission of its 2 *vs.*—
 مَع — لَه and لَا — its formation—
 to be *uninfl.*—reason for its uninflectedness—it is really *infl.*—the | in مَعَا — أَيْنَ — is *uninfl.*—
 its termination—مَتَى — is also a *p.* or a *n. syn.* with وَسَطًا — is *uninfl.*—its termination—أَيْنَمَا and مَتَى — distinction between مَتَى and إِذَا — أَينَ — is *uninfl.*—reason of its uninflectedness—its termination—its derivation—its *dial. vars.*—parsing of *cond.* and *interrog. ns.* and the like—the *enunc.* of the *cond. inch.*—the *correl.* of the *cond. inch.* needs a *cop.*—the *interrog.* or *cond. reg.* of the *v.* or its like must precede its *op.*—the *op.* of مَتَى and every *cond. adv.* ... 785—804

- § 207. كَيْفَ is a *n.*—treated as an *adv.* by many—dispute as to whether it be an *adv.* or a plain *n.*—how renderable—its usages—said to occur as a *con.*—is *uninfl.*—reason of its uninflectedness—its termination—أَنَّى — كَيْ — condition of its occurrence in the sense of كَيْفَ or مَتَى — it is *uninfl.*—reason of its uninflectedness—its termination ... 804—810

THE COMPOUNDS.

- § 208. IH's definition—includes such as سَيَبْرِيَّة — excludes such as عَدْلًا لِلَّهِ and قَاطِعًا شَرًّا — excludes part of the defined also—amendment of the definition—classification of the *comps.*—dispute as to classification of certain *comps.* ... 811—812

	Page.
§ 209. Distinction between the 2 kinds of <i>comp.</i> ...	812—813
§ 210. The <i>num.</i> exceeding 10—the ع of عَشْر sometimes made quiescent—this <i>num.</i> , when synarthrous or <i>pre.</i> , remains <i>uninfl.</i> —dispute as to uninflectedness of the <i>pre.</i> —treatment of this <i>num.</i> when used as a name for a man ...	813—814
§ 211. Classification of the synthetic <i>comps.</i> <i>uninfl.</i> upon Fath—all synthetic <i>comps.</i> used as <i>ds. s.</i> —synthetic composition in what is not an <i>adv.</i> or <i>d. s.</i> — o. f. of حَيْصٌ بَيْصٌ — its <i>dial. vars.</i> ...	814—818
§ 212. خَارِ بَارِ — its <i>dial. vars.</i> and meanings ...	818—820
§ 213. بَادِي بُدَا or بَانِي بُدِي — is used as a <i>d. s.</i> —its <i>dial. vars.</i> ...	820
§ 214. اَيْدِي سَبَا or اَيْدِي سَبَا — its <i>dial. vars.</i> —is a <i>d. s.</i> —the Hamza of سَبَا omitted ...	820—821
§ 215. حَضْرَمُوتٌ , قَالِي قَلَا — its <i>dial. vars.</i> —مُعْدِي كَرِب , and the like—the عِي of مُعْدِي , when <i>pre.</i> , is made quiescent in the <i>acc.</i> —كَرِب in مُعْدِي كَرِب — dispute as to classification of قَالِي قَلَا ...	821—822

THE UNINFLECTED METONYMS.

- § 216. Definition of metonymy—signification of the *met.* denoting an *expression*—all the *interrog.* and *cond.* *ns.* are *met.*—being used for *unlimited particular*

things—all *met.* are not *uninfl.*—the *uninfl. met.*
—the *interrog.* and *cond. n.* why not reckoned
here—the *met.* are like the *adv.* in being *infl.*
and *uninfl.*

823—825

§ 217. $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ — is *interrog.* and enunciatory—both denote
number and *numbered*, and each needs a *sp.*—
case and number of the *sp.*—points of agreement
between the *interrog.* and enunciatory—and of
difference

825—827

§ 218. Parsing of $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$

827—828

§ 219. Suppression of the *sp.*

828—829

§ 220. Number of the *sp.* of the *interrog.* $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ — of the *n.*
coupled to the *sp.* of the *interrog.*—of the *sp.* of
the enunciatory

829—830

§ 221. Separation of $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ from its *sp.*—case of the *sp.* of the
separated *interrog.* $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ — and of the *sp.* of the
separated enunciatory $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ —treatment of the *sp.*
of the separated enunciatory $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$, when the separa-
tion is by a *trans. v.*—and of the *sp.* of the
separated *interrog.* $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$, when the *sp.*, if $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ were
not separated from it, would be governed in the
gen.

830—831

§ 222. Number and gender of $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ —and of the *pron.* relat-
ing to it—this *pron.* ought not to be a *du.* ...

832

§ 223. $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ is peculiar to *indets.*—apparent determination of
its *sp.*—and of the *n.* coupled to its *sp.* ...

832—833

§ 224. Case of the *sp.* of the *interrog.* $\overset{\wedge}{\text{ك}}$ — the *gen.* when
allowable in this *sp.*—the *sp.* of the enunciatory

- كَمْ is sometimes governed in the *acc.* without separation—^{وَعَمَّةٌ} كَمْ ... 833—835
- § 225. The *sp.* how governed in the *gen.* when كَمْ is *interrog.* —and when كَمْ is enunciatory—^{مِنْ} prefixed to the *sp.*—كَمْ when construed to be pronounced with Tanwīn ... 835—836
- § 226. كَذَا and كَآيِنٌ — points of agreement between كَذَا and كَمْ — and of difference—كَذَا as a *met.* for the expression occurring in narration—the uncompounded كَذَا — هَذَا — points of agreement between ^{أَوَّعٌ} كَآيِنٌ and كَمْ — and of difference—*dial. vars.* of كَآيِنٌ ... 836—840
- § 227. ذَيْتٌ and كَيْتٌ — their terminations—their pausal form—they are often used according to the *o.f.*—^{كَيْتٌ} — reason of their uninflectedness—they are always repeated with the *con.* ى — distinction between them ... 840—841

CHAPTER VI.

THE DUAL NOUN.

- § 228. Definition of dualization—and of the *du.*—*o.f.* of the *du.* and *pl.*—corresponding definition of the *du.*—demonstration of the theory that the *o.f.* is coupling—coupling when allowable instead of dualization—*multiplication* sometimes denoted by repetition without coupling or by dualization—conditions of dualization—*ns.* not dualized—exceptions to some of these conditions—classifi-

cation of the *du.*—the form of the *sing.* is generally preserved—elision of the ة of femininization—of the ن of the *du.*—and of its ! ... 842—846

§ 229. The form of the *sing.* when unaltered in the *du.*—and when altered—dualization of the abbreviated, when its ! is 3rd—different opinions on the mode of converting the *rad.* ! and the ! whose *o. f.* is unknown—modes allowable when the ! has two *o. fs.*—dualization of the abbreviated when its ! is 4th or upwards—مَذْرُوءَانِ—elision of the ! in the *du.* of the abbreviated transcending four letters—خَوَزَلَانِ and قَهْقَرَانِ—summary of the rules for converting the ! of the abbreviated in the *du.*—summary of the anomalous *du.s.* in the abbreviated ... 846—850

§ 230. The *us.* whose final is Hamza are prolonged and unprolonged—definition of the prolonged—its Hamza—dualization of the prolonged when its Hamza is (1) substituted for the ! of femininization—(2) *rad.*—(3) denotative of co-ordination and (4) converted from a *rad.* و or ی — ثِنَايَانِ and كِسَايَانِ—elision of the ! and Hamza of femininization—summary of the anomalous *du.s.* in the prolonged—definition and dualization of the unprolonged ... 850—853

	Page.
§ 231. Dualization of the <i>n.</i> arbitrarily curtailed of its final—the <i>n.</i> whose <i>ŷ</i> is elided for a necessitating cause	853—855
§ 232. Dualization of the <i>quasi-pl.</i> and of the broken, but not ultimate, <i>pl.</i> —dualization is easier in the <i>quasi-pl.</i> than in the broken <i>pl.</i> —and is not allowable in the ultimate <i>pl.</i> ...	855—856
§ 233. Number preferred in the <i>pre.</i> , (1) when two parts are literally or ideally <i>pre.</i> to their two wholes, (a) if the two wholes be uniform in letter—the <i>du.</i> disapproved unless omission of dualization would lead to ambiguity—the <i>pl.</i> why preferred to the <i>sing.</i> —difference of opinion as to the number allowable when each whole contains more than one of each part— <i>ex.</i> of the <i>du.</i> and <i>pl.</i> , and <i>ex.</i> of the <i>du.</i> —(b) if the two wholes be separated by a <i>con.</i> —(2) when the <i>pre.</i> is not part of the <i>post. du.</i> —number of the <i>pron.</i> , <i>qual.</i> , <i>dem.</i> , and the like, belonging to the <i>pre. n.</i> whose letter differs from its sense—the <i>sing.</i> substituted for the <i>du.</i> or <i>pl.</i> —the <i>du.</i> for the <i>sing.</i> —the <i>pl.</i> for the <i>sing.</i> or <i>du.</i> — <i>ex.</i> of the <i>sing.</i> and <i>pl.</i> for the <i>du.</i>	856—861

CHAPTER VII.—THE PLURAL NOUN.

§ 234. Definition of pluralization—and of <i>pl.</i> —IH's definition of <i>pl.</i> —R's explanation of the

definition—^{كَبْرٌ} and ^{كَبْرٌ} not *pls.*, but ^{فَلَكٌ}
 a *pl.*—classification of *pl.*—sound *pl.*—also
 called *perf. pl.*—*masc.* and *fem.*—sound *pl.*
masc.—also called *perf. pl. masc.*—*perf. pl.*
masc.—also called *pl.* analogous to *du.*, and
pl. with two spellings—predicament of its
 two augments—elision of its ^{نِ}—its *sing.*
 sound in the final, or unsound—formation of
 this *pl.* from the sound—the unsound defect-
 ive, abbreviated, or otherwise unsound—for-
 mation of this *pl.* from the otherwise unsound
 —from the defective—from the abbreviated
 —no distinction made by the BB and IM
 between the abbreviated whose ^ا is *aug.* and
 the abbreviated whose ^ا is *rad.*—co-ordi-
 nation of abbreviated with defective allowed
 when the ^ا is *aug.*—or whether the ^ا be *aug.*
 or *rad.*—or necessary when the ^ا is undoubt-
 edly *aug.*, disallowed when the ^ا is undoubt-
 edly *rad.*, and allowed when the ^ا may be *aug.*
 or *rad.*—predicament of the prolonged—
sing. of this *pl.* either substantive or *ep.*—a
 proper name, or an *ep.*, of a rational being
 —or, in Z's words, of "him that knows"
 —the same conditions prescribed for this *pl.*
 as for the *du.*, with some additions—addi-
 tional conditions—*ns.* that do not satisfy the
 conditions—some conditions relaxed or dis-

عُريَانُونَ—سَيْفَانُونَ and نَدْمَانُونَ—puted—
 and خُصَّاصُونَ—*pls.* co-ordinated with *perf.*
pl. masc.—classification of such co-ordinates
 —anomalous *pls. masc.* with *he* , and ن—
 لَيْثُ عَفْرِيَنِ—irregular *pls.* with the , and ن
 common in one class of *ns.*—sometimes
 found in others—all the beings mentioned
 not necessarily *masc.* or rational—*du.* and
pl. of proper name, (1) when a synthetic
comp., if its second member be (a) *infl.*—(b)
na Infl.—(2) when an *att. comp.*—(3) when a
du. or a *pl.* with the , and ن—other forms of
du. and *pl.* of سَيْبِيَّة , and of خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ as
 a proper name—(4) when a prothetic *comp.*—
pls. of كَذَا and ابْنُ كَذَا—sound *pl. fem.*
 —significations of its ا and ت—its *sing.*
 preserved—but the final ة elided in the *pl.*—
 formation of this *pl.* from abbreviated—
 predicament of prolonged and defective—*pl.*
 of ابْنَةُ or بِنْتُ , and of أُخْتُ—of the *tril.*
 whose ل is elided; the ة being put as
 compensation for it—this *pl.* uniform in *gen.*
 and *acc.*—belongs to *fem.* substantives and
eps.—is regular or confined to hearsay
 —*fem.* substantives that regularly have this
pl.—formation of this *pl.* from such names
 of letters as end in ا—proper names that

universally have this *pl.* irrespectively of their gender—substantives that mostly have it—*eps.* that have it—*masc. eps.* that universally have it—broken *pl.*—its classification—common to rational and irrational, substantive and *ep.*, *masc.* and *fem.*—*pls.* of the proper name of a man—and of a woman—*exs.*—number of formations in broken *pl.* 862—885

- § 235. Classification of broken *pl.*—*pl.* of paucity and *pl.* of multitude—*pl.* of paucity not a regular *pl.*—its four paradigms—other paradigms sometimes held to be *pls.* of paucity—dispute whether the two sound *pls.* are *pls.* of paucity—proof that the four paradigms are peculiar to paucity—other paradigms *pls.* of multitude—number of such formations—distinction between *pl.* of paucity and *pl.* of multitude found only in the *tril.*—*pls.* common to paucity and multitude—*pl.* of paucity when turned into *pl.* of multitude—each sometimes used instead of the other—*pl.* of paucity subject to many predicaments of *sing.* ... 885—888

- § 236. The *◌* sometimes made the seat of inflection in irregular *pls.* with the *◌* and *◌*—mostly in poetry—and not universally in *perf. pl. masc.* and its co-ordinates—but only in what is improperly pluralized with the *◌*,

and ن as a compensation for a deficiency—
 explanation of apparent instances to the
 contrary—two *dials.* in *cat.* of سَنِينٌ—two
 more mentioned by Syt—the ي or و, why
 inseparable from it—this inflection allow-
 able in prose in irregular *pls.* with the و, and
 ن when used as proper names—usual
 inflection of *du.* and *pl.* analogous to it,
 and of their co-ordinates, when used as
 proper names—*exs.*—the ن allowably made
 the seat of inflection when the word has
 not more than seven letters—the ! then
 usually inseparable from the *du.*, and the
 ي from the *pl.*—three *dials.* in the name
 formed from this *pl.* and its co-ordinates—
 criticism on an *ex.* cited by R ... 888—894

- § 237. The *sing.* generally mentioned, and then its *pl.*
 —paradigms of unaugmented *tril.* substan-
 tive—and of its broken *pl.*—some of these
 formations regular—and the rest anomalous
 —broken *pls.* of (1) فَعْلٌ, (a) regular—(b)
 anomalous—(2) فَعْلٌ, (a) regular—(b) ano-
 malous—*pl.* of the reduplicated فَعْلٌ—(3)
 فَعْلٌ—(4) فَعْلٌ—(5) فَعْلٌ, (a) regular—for-
 mations sometimes used in paucity and multi-
 tude—(b) anomalous—(6) فَعْلٌ—(7) فَعْلٌ
 —(8) فَعْلٌ, (a) regular—formation some-

times used in paucity and multitude—(b) anomalous—فُعِلْ (10)—فُعِلْ (9)—فُعِلْ—comparative frequency of these paradigms of broken *pl.*—dispute as to whether فُعِلْ and فُعِلْ are *quasi-pl. ns.* or broken *pls.*—فُعِلْ—its plurality disputed ...

894—903

- § 238. Unaugmented *tril.* substantive made *fem.* with the ة—its formations—paradigms of its broken *pl.*—*pl.* of (1) فُعِلْ, (a) in paucity—(b) in multitude—*pl.* of paucity sometimes used in multitude—(2) فُعِلْ, (a) in paucity—(b) in multitude—أَفْعَلْ—the فُعِلْ unsound in the ل—or reduplicated—(3) فُعِلْ, (a) in paucity—(b) in multitude—(4) فُعِلْ, (a) in paucity—(b) in multitude—the فُعِلْ unsound in the ع or ل—or reduplicated—حُجُوزْ—(5) فُعِلْ, (a) in paucity—(b) in multitude—*pl.* with the ا and ت—the فُعِلْ unsound in the ع—or reduplicated—أَفْعَلْ—(6) فُعِلْ—number of formations of broken *pl.*—فُعِلْ the commonest—which regular, and which anomalous ...

903—911

- §. 239. *Pl.* of *ep.* usually sound—sometimes broken—formations of *tril. ep.* that has a broken

pl.—paradigms of its broken *pl.*—broken *pls.*

of (1) فَعْلٌ —number of their paradigms—
which regular, and which anomalous—cause

of their formation—عَبِيدٌ and عَبَادٌ —(2)

فَعْلٌ and فَعْلَانٌ —(3) فَعْلٌ —(4) فَعْلٌ

فَعْلٌ —(5) فَعْلٌ and فَعْلٌ —(6) فَعْلٌ

—(7) فَعْلٌ —comparative frequency of these

pls.—remaining paradigms of *tril. ep.*—no

broken *pl.* in them—sound *pl. masc.*—sound

pl. fem.—no broken *pl.* of any *fem.* but فَعْلَةٌ

—and, according to S, فَعْلَةٌ ...

911—917

§ 240. فَعْلَةٌ substantive or *ep.*—treatment of its ع

in sound *pl.* (1) of the substantive, (a) when

the ع is sound—*exs.* of فَعْلَةٌ —and of فَعْلَةٌ

—(b) when the ع is unsound—*exs.* of فَعْلَةٌ

—formations excluded by condition that

the ع should be sound—جَوْرَاتٌ and بَيْضَاتٌ

—*pl.* of فَعْلَةٌ unsound in the ع —and of

فَعْلَةٌ —(c) when the ل is unsound—*pl.* of

such as دَعْدٌ or جَفْنَةٌ when either unsound

in the ل or a *quasi-ep.*—(2) of the *ep.*—

كَهَلَاتٌ —الْعَبَلَاتُ —رَبَعَاتٌ and لَحَبَاتٌ

—the ع why made quiescent in the *ep.*, and

pronounced with Fath in the substantive ...

917—924

- § 241. Predicament of *fem.* which contains no ة —
 عَيْرَاتٌ and أَهْلَاتٌ ... 924—925
- § 242. In broken *pl.* of the *tril.* whose ع is unsound,
 أَفْعُلٌ not formed in *cat.* of either و or ي —
 nor فُعُولٌ in *cat.* of و —nor فَعَالٌ in *cat.* of
 ي — فَعُولٌ — أَفْعَالٌ in the فَعْلٌ whose ف
 is a Hamza or و — and in the reduplicated
 فَعْلٌ ... 925—929
- § 243. Formation of أَفْعُلٌ and فُعُولٌ from *tril.* un-
 sound in the ل — قُسِيٌ — *pls.* of فَتَيٌ —
 فُعُولٌ irregular as *pl.* of فَعْلٌ unsound in the
 ل ... 930—932
- § 244. *Pls.* of *tril.* substantive curtailed of the ل,
 and containing the ة of feminization ... 932—934
- § 245. Broken *pl.* of unaugmented *quad.*, whether
 bare of the ة, or containing it—sound *pl.*
 of the latter—measure of broken *pl.*—
 broken *pl.* of unaugmented *quin.*—elision
 of fifth *rad.*—sometimes of fourth—not of
 third—dispute as to elision of fourth and
 third—sound *pls.* of unaugmented *quad.* or
quin. ... 934—938
- § 246. Augmented *tril.*—substantive or *ep.*—para-
 digms of broken *pl.* in augmented *tril.*
 substantive of four letters, whose augment

is a letter of prolongation, third—formations of *sing.* in such of these substantives as have a broken *pl.*—broken *pls.* of (1) ^{فَعَالٌ}—(2) ^{فَعَالٌ}—(3) ^{فَعَالٌ}—(4) ^{فَعِيلٌ}—^{أَدَمٌ} and ^{فَعِيلٌ}—(5) ^{فَعُولٌ}—^{فَعُولٌ} for ^{فَعُولٌ}—^{فَعُولٌ} for ^{فَعُولٌ}—comparative frequency of the paradigms of broken *pl.*—^{أَفْعُلٌ} found only in (1) tho *fem.* ^{فَعَالٌ}—other broken *pls.* of these *fems.*—(2) the *fem.* ^{فَعِيلٌ}—other broken *pls.* of this *fem.*—broken *pls.* of the *fem.* ^{فَعُولٌ}—^{فَعُولٌ} as *pl.* of this *fem.*—*pls.* of ^{ذَنُوبٌ}—paradigms regular in *masc.* and *fem.* respectively—^{فَعُولٌ} extraordinary in ^{فَعَالٌ}—*pls.* of reduplicated and of unsound in the ^ل—or ^ع—*sings.* and *pls.* of such of these substantives as end in the ^ة of feminization—the *pl.* ^{فَعَائِلٌ}—regular in such of these substantives as end in the prolonged ^ة of feminization—paradigms of broken *pl.* in *eps.* of this formation—broken *pls.* of (1) ^{فَعَالٌ}—*pls.* of the *fem.* ^{فَعَالٌ}—(2) ^{فَعَالٌ}—(3) ^{فَعَالٌ}—(4) ^{فَعِيلٌ}—^{سَرَاةٌ}—sound *pls.* of ^{فَعِيلٌ}—(5) ^{فَعُولٌ}—no sound *pl.* of ^{فَعُولٌ}—^{عَدُوٌّ} and its *pls.*—

broken *pl.* of فَعِيلٌ i. q. مَفْعُولٌ — no sound
pl.—paradigms of broken *pl.* in *fem. eps.*—
 broken *pls.* of (1) فَعِيلَةٌ —(2) فُعَالَةٌ —(3)
 فَعُولَةٌ 938—970

- § 247. Paradigms of broken *pl.* of substantive فَاعِلٌ
 —(1) فَوَاعِلٌ or فَوَاعِيلٌ —(2) فُعَلَانٌ —(3)
 فُعَلَانٌ —(4) أَفْعَلَةٌ —*fem.* of this formation
 —broken *pl.* of فَاعِلَةٌ —and of فَاعِلَاءَ —
 فَنَائِسُ and فَنَائِرٌ —paradigms of broken
pl. of *masc. ep.* فَاعِلٌ —two regular, and
 rest abnormal —(1) فُعَلٌ —(2) فُعَالٌ —(3)
 فُعَلَةٌ —(4) فُعَلَةٌ —(5) فُعَلٌ or فُعَلٌ —(6)
 فُعُولٌ —(7) فُعَلَانٌ —(8) فُعَالٌ —(9) فُعُولٌ
 —(10) فُعَلَةٌ —(11) أَفْعَالٌ —
 فَوَاعِلٌ a فَوَاعِلٌ — خَدَمٌ and غَيْبٌ — هَلَكَى
 broken *pl.* of فَاعِلٌ when *ep.* of irrational
 object—dispute as to its regularity—not
 when *ep.* of rational *masc.*, except in a few
 anomalous instances—or in poetic license—
 such exceptions how explained—sound *pl.*
 of rational *masc. ep.* فَاعِلٌ —paradigms of
 broken *pl.* of *fem. eps.* فَاعِلٌ and فَاعِلَةٌ —

(1) فَوَاعِلُ — (2) فُعْلٌ when regular	
lar — عَوَارِضُ — فَوَاعِلُ regular as <i>pl.</i> of	
فَوَعْلٌ and فَوَعْلَةٌ — general rule for deter-	
mining regularity of فَوَاعِلُ — فُعْلٌ when	
regular — (3) فُعَالٌ — (4) فَعَالٌ — sound <i>pl.</i>	
of <i>ep.</i> فَاعِلَةٌ	970—992

- § 248. Paradigms of broken *pl.* of *n.* ending in | of feminization fourth—such *pl.* (1) an ultimate *pl.*, فَعَالِي, فَعَالٍ, or فَعَالِي, or (2) فَعَالٍ — فَعَالِي and فَعَالٍ common to substantive and *ep.*—the ultimate *pl.* the *o. f.*—فَعَالِي—necessary, according to R, in *ep.* whose | is abbreviated, and more frequent than فَعَالٍ in substantive—why preferred to فَعَالٍ—found in *pl.* of *n.* ending in converted or co-ordinative |—three forms in *pl.* of *n.* ending in prolonged | fourth—فَعَالِي, فَعَالٍ, and فَعَالِي — فَعَالِي not allowable in *pl.* of *n.* ending in prolonged | of co-ordination—*pls.* of مَهْرِي and بُخْتِي — of أَنْفِيَّة — فَعَالٍ and مُعَيَّة — مُعَيَّة — عَارِيَّة — فَعَالِي when found together—فَعَالٍ when separate — فَعَالِي when separate — فَعَالِي

regular as *pl.* of *tril.* substantive quiescent in the ع, whose final is an *aug.* double ي not denoting *fresh relation*—أَنَاسِيٌّ and مَهَارِيٌّ—sign of *fresh relation*—ظَرَائِيٌّ—*pl.* of other formations—فَعَالٌ—ultimate *pl.* not used as *pl.* of فَعَلَاءٌ—nor ultimate *pl.* or فَعَالٌ as *pl.* of فُعَلَى, فُعَلَى, فُعَلَى as *pl.* of *eps.* فُعَلَى and فَعَلَاءٌ—فُعَلَى as *pl.* of *eps.* فُعَلَى and فَعَلَاءٌ—فُعَلَى—neither فَعَالٌ nor فُعَلَى found as *pl.* of *n.* whose ف is a ي—فُعَلٌ and فُعَلٌ peculiar to *ep.*—فُعَلٌ—when regular—Kasr of its ف—mobilization of its medial—conditions of mobilization—فُعَلٌ and نَفْسٌ and نَفْسٌ—when regular—نَفْسٌ and نَفْسٌ—sound *pl.* of *n.* ending in ا of feminization—no sound *pl.* of (1) فَعَلَاءٌ *fem.* of أَفْعَلٌ, or its *masc.*—unless فَعَلَاءٌ be transferred to *cat.* of substantive—خَضِرَاوَاتٌ (2)—فُعَلَى *fem.* of فَعَلَانٌ, or its *masc.*—*pls.* of *n.* ending in ا of feminization fifth—broken *pls.* of such as حَرَابِيَّةٌ and حَبَارِيٌّ ... 993—1009

- § 249. Paradigms of broken *pl.* of أَفْعَلٌ, substantive or *ep.*—أَفْعَلٌ when a *pl.* of the *ep.* أَفْعَلٌ

— الْأَصَاغِرَةُ — sound *pl.* of the أَفْعَلُ of
 أَفْعَلَى — *pls.* of this أَفْعَلُ when a proper
 name—ordinarily no sound *pl.* of the أَفْعَلُ
 of فَعْلَاء or its *fem.* — الْأَحَاوِصُ and الْخُوصُ
 — أَحْوَصَاتُ and أَحْوَصُونَ — *pls.* of أَرْمَلُ
 and أَرْمَلَةٌ 1009—1013

§ 250. Broken *pl.* of the substantive سِرَاحٌ — فَعْلَانُ
 and ظَرْبَى — ضِبَاعٌ — فَعْلَانُ extraordinary
 as *pl.* of فَعْلَانُ — number of instances—
 IA's criticism of S's theory that كِرْوَانُ is
pl. of كَرَا — justification of this theory—
 فَعْلَانُ not extraordinary according to it—
 كَرَا — *pls.* of كِرْوَانُ — broken *pls.* of the *ep.*
 فَعْلَانُ (1) when its *fem.* is فَعْلَى — *pls.* of
 فَعْلَانَةُ (2) when its *fem.* is حَرَمَى —
 neither فَعْلَانُ nor فَعْلَى regular — the two
 sometimes combined — فَعْلَى — number of
 instances restricted to four by IH—not
 by others—found only in *pl.* of the *ep.*
 فَعْلَانُ — Damm of the ف preferable, neces-
 sary, or disallowed — فَعْلَى held by some to
 be a *quasi-pl. n.* — broken *pl.* of the *ep.* فَعْلَانُ
 — the *pl.* فَعْلَانُ — its regularity — sound *pl.*

- of فُعْلَانٌ —no broken *pl.* of عَرَبَانٌ —nor
 sound *pl.* of the فُعْلَانُ of فَعْلَى ... 1013—1020
- § 251. فَيَعْلُ — فَيَعْلُ and فَيَعْلُ where found—opi-
 nion of S—*pl.* of فَيَعْلُ (1) generally sound
 —*exs.*—elision of its ع — خَيْرٌ —(2) some-
 times broken—its broken *pls.*— its gender 1020—1024
- § 252. *Pls.* of intensive paradigms, and of *act.* and
pass. parts.—broken *pls.* of فَعَالٌ , مَفْعُولٌ ,
 the *masc.* مَفْعِلٌ or مَفْعِلٌ , and the *fem.* مَفْعِلٌ
 —cases where the *ep.* beginning with م has
 no broken *pl.*— مَنَاتَيْنِ 1024—1032
- § 253. Broken *pls.* of the *tril.*—in paucity—and
 multitude—additional formations of mul-
 titude— فَعَالِلٌ —its like— فَعَالِلٌ when
 regular—its like when regular—description
 of augmented *tril.* that forms its broken *pl.*
 like broken *pl.* of *quad.*—description given
 by IH—criticism on its language—*pls.* of
 such augmented *tril.* when it contains the
 ʾ of feminization—augmented *tril.* so far
 supposed to be neither foreign nor *rel.*—
 affixion of the ʾ to the final of its broken *pl.*
 when it is foreign or *rel.*—explanation of
 addition of the ʾ —foreignness and relation
 combined—omission of the ʾ —the ʾ necessa-
 ry in the *pl.* of the *rel.*, not of the foreign—

sometimes affixed in other cases—another explanation of the *š* in the *pl.* of the *rel.*—broken *pl.* of (1) the *quad.* augmented by a soft, *i. e.*, quiescent unsound, letter, fourth and penultimate—this *aug.* not elided—(2) the *tril.* augmented by two letters, one of which is fourth and a letter of prolongation—or rather a soft letter—condition that the soft letter should be fourth—broken *pl.* when the unsound letter fourth is mobile—elision of the unsound letter fourth, when mobile—or when converted from a *rad.*—elision of augment incompatible with formation of *فَعَالِيلُ* or *فَعَالِلُ*—elision in the augmented *tril.* and *quad.*—elision in the *tril.*—part of the augment sometimes superior to part—nature of superiority—which part should be elided—retention of superior—the *م* superior to any other *aug.*—even to a co-ordinative *aug.*—and therefore necessarily retained—the *disj.* Hamza and the *ي* retained when initial—the *م*, Hamza, and *ي* retained on account of their *id.* superiority—elision of the *aug.* whose elision serves to avert elision of the other—elision when neither *aug.* is superior to the other—elision in the *quad.*—*pl.* of *عَدَاثِرَةٌ*—elision in the *quin.*—question whether the 4th *rad.*

may be elided instead of the 5th—compensation for the elided—dispute between the KK and BB as to addition and elision of the **ي** — **سَلَالِيمُ** , **دَمَامِيلُ** , **قَرَادِيدُ** — **ي**

sound *pl.* of **قَسُورٌ** and **قَوَامٌ** ... 1032—1053

- § 254. *Sing. n.* sometimes applied to genus—then named collective generic *n.*—not really a broken *pl.*—applicable to any number—seldom used only as a *pl.*—erroneously held by the KK to be a broken *pl.*—its formations, and *pls.* of its *n. un.*— used (1) mostly for things created—R's criticism of the reason given for this by the GG—(2) seldom for things manufactured—broken *pl.* sometimes used for created things—generic *ns.* anomalously ending in **ة**—their broken *pls.* 1053—1063

- § 255. Broken *pl.* formed from assumed *sing.*—**ظُرُوفٌ** — **كَرَوَانٌ** — **حَوَاتِجٌ** — the last frequently found—but wrongly disapproved by As and H — **خَوَاتِيمٌ** , **دَوَانِيقٌ** , and **زَوَارِيقٌ** —the preceding all irregular *pls.* of existing *sings.*—*mascs.* pluralized with the **ا** and **ت** , and *fems.* with the **و** and **ن** — heteromorphous *pls.*—*pls.* having no *sing.* — **أَشْدٌ** and **أَشْدٌ** — **عَسَاقِلُ** and **عَسَاقِيلُ** 1063—1071

- § 256. Pluralization of *pl.*—broken *pl.* sometimes pluralized—*pl. pl.* sound or broken—broken

pl. pl.—sound *pl. pl.*—why formed with **ا** and **ت**—dispute as to regularity of *pl. pl.*—*pl. pl.* really not regular—nor *pl.* of generic *n.*—or of *inf. n.*—or *quasi-pl. n.*—*pl. pl.* often formed from *pl.* of paucity, seldom from *pl.* of multitude—but not from every *pl.* on the measure of **أَفْعَلٌ**, **أَفْعَلَةٌ**, or **أَفْعَالٌ**—broken *pls.* of these *pls.* of paucity—sound *pl.* of **أَفْعَلَةٌ**—sound and broken *pls.* of *pls.* of multitude—**أَبْرَأَكُ** and **يَرْكَانُ**—none of these *pls.* to be copied—least number denoted by *pl. pl.*—and by *pl. pl.* of *quasi-pl. n.*—pluralization of *pl. pl.*—successive *pls.*—no broken *pl.* of ultimate *pl.*—nor of **فَعْلَةٌ** or **فَعْلَةٌ**—formation of ultimate *pl.*—such formation not found among *sings.*—ultimate *pl.* why diptote—made triptote by addition of **ة** ... 1071—1083

- § 257. *Quasi-pl. n.*—*sing.* in form, *pl.* in sense—not a broken *pl.*—its *sing.* generally a heteromorphous expression—*quasi-pl. n.* held by Akh and Fr, and generic *n.* by Fr, to be a *pl.* when it has a *sing.* of its own crude-form—*quasi-pl. n.* and generic *n.* not *pls.*, by common consent, when they have no such *sing.*—gender of this sort of *quasi-pl. n.*—*quasi-pl. n.* distinguished from *pl.* of assumed *sing.*—and from irregular *pl.* of

existing *sing.*—difference between *pl.*, *quasi-pl. n.*, and collective generic *n.*—integral generic *n.*— **فَعْلٌ** — **فَعِيلٌ** and **فُعَالٌ** — **فَعْلَةٌ** ... 1083—1092

§ 258. *Sing. n.* ending in sign of feminization sometimes applied to individual and collection— **بُهَمَاءٌ** — **أَرْطَاءٌ** and **عَلَقَاءٌ**—*n. un.* of **طَرْفَاءٌ**, **قَصَبَاءٌ**, and **حَلَفَاءٌ** — broken *pls.* of the last ... 1092—1093

§ 259. Form of *pl.* sometimes determined by sense of *sing.*— **فَعْلِيٌّ** *orig. pl.* of **فَعِيلٌ** i. q. **مَفْعُولٌ** in sense of *afflicted*—adopted as *pl.* by measures resembling this **فَعِيلٌ** in sense—such adoption not regular— **فَعْلِيٌّ** as a *pl.* in other cases— **كَيْسِيٌّ** — such measures sometimes pluralized according to their forms— **يَتَامَى** and **أَيَامَى** — **فُعَالِيٌّ** *pl.* of **فُعَالٌ** and cognate measures— **فُعَالِيٌّ** as a *pl.* in other cases ... 1093—1096

§ 260. Elided letter restored in broken *pl.*—classification of *tril.* reduced to *bil.*—sound and broken *pls.* of such *bil.*, (1) when containing the ة of feminization—measure of **شَفَاءٌ** and **شَاءٌ** —broken *pls.* of **بُرَّةٌ** and **لُعَّةٌ** —(2) when not containing the ة —*o. f.* of

أَسْت — of يَد — of نَم — broken *pls.* of
bils. analogous to those of corresponding
trils. 1096—1099

- § 261. Sound *pl.* of irrational *masc.* that has no
 broken *pl.*—why formed with ا and ت —
 this *pl.* not formed from irrational *masc.*
 that has a broken *pl.*—irrational *fem.* not
 containing ة of feminization is treated
 like irrational *masc.*—*pls.* of شَمَال and بُرَان
 —of جَوَالِق and similar *sings.* ... 1099—1100

CHAPTER VIII.—THE INDETERMINATE NOUN AND THE DETERMINATE.

- § 262. The *n. indet.* and *det.*—meaning of *det.* and
indet. — and of indeterminateness — the
indet. primary—and *det.* secondary—defi-
 nition of *indet.*—its capacity for denoting
totality of the genus—and for receiving, or
 occurring in the place of what receives, the
 determinative اَل —its sign—degrees of in-
 determinateness—test of degree—definition
 of *det.*—determinateness dependent upon
 knowledge of person addressed, not of
 speaker—incapacity of the *det.* for
 receiving, or occurring in the place of what
 receives, the determinative اَل —classifi-
 cation of *dets.*—degrees of determinate-
 ness—gradations of *dets.*—grade of the

<i>n. pre.</i> to a <i>det.</i> —metrical gradation-table —degrees of determinateness in the <i>prons.</i> — controversy as to determinateness or inde- terminateness of <i>pron.</i> of 3rd <i>pers.</i> relating to <i>indet.</i> —theory that, when an <i>indet.</i> is repeated <i>indet.</i> , the second is different from the first, but that, when an <i>indet.</i> is repeated <i>det.</i> , or a <i>det.</i> is repeated <i>det.</i> or <i>indet.</i> , the second is identical with the first— a tradition so explained—evidence in sup- port of the theory—difficulties involved in it—necessary limitation of it	... 1101—1112
--	---------------

CHAPTER IX.

THE MASCULINE NOUN AND THE FEMININE.

§ 263. The <i>masc.</i> original, and <i>fem. deriv.</i> —definition of the <i>masc.</i> —and <i>fem.</i> —signs of feminini- zation—the <i>fem.</i> gender proper and impro- per—the proper stronger than the impro- per—expression or omission of sign of femininization in attribute of a <i>fem.</i> —when (1) an explicit <i>n.</i> in the <i>sing.</i> or <i>du.</i> —(2) a <i>pron.</i> in the <i>sing.</i> or <i>du.</i> —doctrine that either gender is allowable with tropical <i>fem.</i> —with what restrictions correct—(3) a <i>pl.</i> , a generic <i>n.</i> , or a <i>quasi-pl. n.</i>	... 1113—1119
--	---------------

- § 264. The ʾ expressed or supplied—the only sign supplied—and only in instances heard—gender how recognised in such instances ... 1119—1122
- § 265. Reasons for affixing the ʾ —how summed up 1122—1127
- § 266. The ʾ mostly separable—but constitutionally inseparable in *lit. fem.*—and sometimes inseparable in *eps.* of common gender, or peculiar to *masc.* 128
- § 267. Explanation of (1) حَمَارَةٌ, بَغَالَةٌ, جَمَالَةٌ; (2) سَائِلَةٌ, وَارِدَةٌ, شَارِبَةٌ; (3) الْبَصْرِيَّةُ and الْكُوفِيَّةُ; (4) الْمَرْوَانِيَّةُ and الرِّبْرِيزِيَّةُ; (5) حَمُولَةٌ, رَكُوبَةٌ, قَتُوبَةٌ, حَلُوبَةٌ —meaning of the ʾ in these *ns.*—and in حَلُوبَةٌ (1) when used for an *individual*—(2) when *syn.* with حَلُوبٌ 1128—1129
- § 268. The ʾ not affixed to some *fem. eps.* on measures of *act. parts.*—when affixed, and when omitted, in such *eps.*—reasons given for omission—most probable reason ... 1130—1133
- § 269. The ʾ not affixed to *fem. eps.* on some other measures 1133—1137
- § 270. Expression or omission of sign of feminization in attribute of explicit *n.* in the *pl.*—opinion of KK—gender of *v.* if *pl.* be broken—or sound—predicament of attribute

of broken *pl.*, and of sound *pl.* with the
 ا and ت —gender of *sing.* not regarded in
 them—but regarded in *pl.* with the , and
 ن —why not regarded in *pl.* with the ا
 and ت —proof that *fem.* gender in such
pls. as الرِّبَابُ is tropical—predicament of
 سِنُونُ and بَنُونُ —the ت of 3rd *pers. sing.*

fem. of *aor.*, and the ن of feminization
 when a *p.—pron.* relating to *pl.*—the ن
 affixed in paucity, and the ت in multitude,
 to *v.* containing *pron.* relating to broken
pl., or to *num.*—this construction explained
 —not always employed ... 1137—1143

- § 271. Gender of generic *n.*, and number of its
ep.—gender and number of its attribute,
 and of attribute of its *pron.*—mode of
 distinguishing gender in generic *n.* when
 a *lit.fem.*—*fem.* gender allowable in *v.* or
num. of proper *masc.* when a generic *n.*, not
 when a proper name—and either gender in
pron. or *dem.* of *lit.fem.* when a proper
masc., and not a proper name—gender of
quasi-pl. n. ... 1143—1145

- § 272. The ا of feminization—the *ang.* abbrevi-
 ated ا —the abbreviated ا of feminini-
 zation—formations whose ا is peculiar to
 the *fem.*—formations common to the *masc.*
 and *fem.*—دَفْلَى—certain measures peculiar

- to each of the two |s of feminization—
ordinary measures of abbreviated—its ex-
traordinary measures—doubt as to whether
all are extraordinary ... 1145—1154
- § 273. Measures of prolonged | of feminization—
its ordinary and extraordinary measures—
measures common to both |s — فَعْلَاءٌ and
فَعْلَاءٌ — قُوبَاءٌ and قُوبَاءٌ — abbreviation
of prolonged ... 1154—1162

CHAPTER X.

THE DIMINUTIVE NOUN.

- § 274. Definition of *dim.*—observations on definition
—analogy between *dim.* and broken *pl.*—
exemplification of analogy—meanings
imported by *dim.* formation—*dim.* of
magnification—instances of it all reducible
to meaning of *contemptibleness*—tropical
dims.—*dim.* formation a qualification of
the *n.*—conditions prescribed for *dim.* for-
mation—paradigms of *dim.* of *decl. n.*—
distribution of paradigms—فُعَيْعِيلٌ—mean-
ing of “paradigms” here—a conventional
notation—number of *rad.* letters in *dim.*
not to exceed four—no *dim.* of *quin.* in
chastest *dial.*—*dim.* sometimes formed
from *quin.* by elision of a *rad.*—which to

be elided—best to elide the 5th— **سَفِيرَجُلُ**
 and **سَفَارَجُلُ** —processes necessary for formation of *dim.* from *decl. n.*—additional process if *n.* exceed three letters— **شَيْخٌ**
 — **أَصْبَمٌ** and **مَذِيْقٌ** —the **ي** of the *dim.* sometimes changed into **ا** —the letter after the **ي** of the *dim.*, in the *dim.* of the *n.* exceeding three letters, to be pronounced with Fath before the **ة** of femininization, the abbreviated or prolonged **ا** of femininization, the **ا** of **أَفْعَالٌ**, and the **ا** of **فَعَالِنٌ** not forming the *pl.* **فَعَالِيْنَ** —meaning of “before”—reason of this pronunciation before (1) the **ة** of femininization—last member of a *comp.* to be treated like the **ة** —(2) the abbreviated or prolonged **ا** of femininization—which would otherwise be converted into **ي** —(3) the **ا** of **أَفْعَالٌ** —contrary to **إِنْفَعَالٌ** —question whether **أَفْعَالٌ** here includes the *sing.* —interpretation to be put upon IM’s language —(4) the *aug.* **ا** and **ن** —this pronunciation not always observed before these two letters—observed in a coined proper name, or in an *ep.* that refuses the **ة** —or that does not refuse the **ة** —not always in a substantive not a proper name —when observed in such a substantive

if the **ا** be fourth—or after the fourth—when observed in the 'transferred proper name—objection to the rule given by the GG for the *dim.* of the *n.* ending in the **ا** and **ن** — *dim.* of **طَرَبَان** — anomalous *pl.* **فَعَالِينَ** not regarded—*dim.* of *n.* ending in *aug.* **ا** and **ن** when its *pl.* is unknown—exceptional paradigms produced by this pronunciation—certain terminations tacked on to ordinary paradigms—the **ى** of relation—the sign of the *du.* or sound *pl.*—the *dim.* when diptote—causes of diptote declension spoiled by *dim.* formation—some causes always spoiled, others sometimes, and the rest never—declension of foreign proper name containing four letters inclusive of the **ى** of the *dim.*—classification of *ns.* diptote with reference to being *non-dim.* or *dim.* ... 1163—1185

- § 275. Cause of conversion or elision—present in *non-dim.*, and removed or retained in *dim.*—absent from *non-dim.*, and supervening or not supervening in *dim.*—at least three letters required to form a *dim.*—defective *n.* to be supplemented—observations on rule given by IM for supplementing defective *n.*—the **ة** of feminization not reckoned—*bil. deol. n.* restored to *o. f.* in

dim.—whether the elided letter be its ف or ع or ج—and so in every defective *tril.*—different letters restored in different *dials.*—letters restored in *dims.* of سَنَّةٌ and عَصَاٌ—original *bil.* also to be supplemented—by addition of a ي—alternative methods allowed by IM—detailed rules for applying each method—*dim.* of ذٌ ... 1185—1191

§ 276. The *n.* containing three letters after elision not restored to *o. f.*—هُوَ—opinion of S—contrary opinion of IAl and Y, adopted by Mz and Mb, refuted by S and Sf—place of *aug.* making up number of letters to three—*dims.* of هَا and شَا, of هَاثِرٌ and شَاثِكٌ, and of هَا and شَا ... 1191—1193

§ 277. The *conj.* Hamza dropped in *dim.*—cause of its elision—elided ج then restored—ت of بنتٌ and أختٌ not reckoned—words for whose ج such a ت is substituted—their *dims.*—*dim.* of ضَرَبَتْ used as a name ... 1193—1195

§ 278. The substitute—its restoration to *o. f.* in *dim.* and broken *pl.*—substitute restored to *o. f.* when not permanent, and not restored when permanent—converted letter restored to *o. f.* when a soft second—meaning of

“conversion” here—exception of soft letter substituted for a Hamza immediately following a Hamza—similar restoration in broken *pl.*—restoration not peculiar to soft second—dispute whether conversion is removed in *dim.* by removal of its cause—reversion of converted letter to *a. f.* agreed upon in nine cases—disputed in three cases—opinion of S on all three—of Jr on the first—of Zj on the second—opinion of Zj approved by Z and IY, and of S by IM—opinion of Mb on the third—^٩تَحْبَة and ^٩قَرَاث — ^٩أَدَد — conversion of *aug.* letter of prolongation, when second, into , —of ! whose origin is unknown, of ! substituted for a Hamza immediately following a Hamza, and of ! converted from a , —the !, when second, converted into , in four cases, and into ى in one—broken *pl.* like *dim.* in conversion of ! when second—transposed letters not restored to their places—*dim.* of transposed *n.* 1195—1209

- § 279. Predicament of *us.* in which letter following ى of *dim.* must be converted into ى, and have ى of *dim.* incorporated into it—classification of such *us.*—conversion of that letter when a , or a converted or *aug.* ! —cause of such conversion supervenient in

- dim.*—condition of conversion—positions of conversion—reason of conversion—, following *ى* of *dim.*—its position when not a *ل*—its predicament when second—when third—when fourth—conversion of Hamza after *aug.* *ا* following *ى* of *dim.* ... 1209—1213
- § 280. Predicament of , when a *ل* ... 1213
- § 281. Elision of last of three *ى* s combined at end of word, if first be *ى* of *dim.*—reason of elision—no elision in *v.* or *part.*—*exs.* of elision—dispute as to whether elision in *أَحْيَ dim.* of *أَحْيَ* be euphonic or arbitrary—and, if it be arbitrary, then as to whether *أَحْيَ* be triptote or not—*أَحْيَ* or *أَحْيَ*—F's explanation of *أَحْيَ*—*أَحْيَ*, *أَحْيَ*, and *أَحْيَ*—no elision if first *ى* be not *ى* of *dim.*—nor, according to KK, even if it be elision necessary—statements of Sf and IKh—Jh and An mistaken in attributing omission of elision to KK—elision of final double *ى* following a double *ى* , when second does not denote *relation*—*dims.* of *عَلَيَّ* and *عَدَوِيَّ*—nothing elided in *dim.* of *rel.*, but *ى* of *dim.* elided in *rel.* of *dim.*—*dim.* of *rel.* of *dim.* ... 1213—1221
- § 282. The *ة* of feminization when expressed in *dim.*—added to *dim.* of *tril. fem.* bare of *ة*

—exceptions to this rule—the ة why affixed to *dim.* of *tril. fem.*—sense of *ep.* produced by *dim.* formation—*dim.* of proper name disallowed by some—the ة not expressed in *dim.* of *quad. fem.* bare of ة —summary of foregoing rules for adding or omitting the ة —the ة added to *dim.* of *n.* exceeding three letters, when reduced to three in forming *dim.*—original gender regarded in *tril.* when a generic *n.*—not when a proper name—the ة when added in *dim.* of *tril.* used as name for female—reason for observance of original gender in generic *n.*, not in proper name—the ة not affixed to *dim.* of *fem. tril.* bare of ة , when used as name for male—contrary opinion of Y—*dims.* of بِنْتُ and أُخْتُ when used as names—the ة anomalously omitted in *dims.* of certain *trils.*—observations on some of these *trils.*—most of them combined in mnemonic verse—the ة anomalously affixed to *dims.* of certain *ns.* exceeding three letters—reason for such affixion—Sf's explanation—additional anomaly in affixion of ة to *dim.* of اَمَامٌ —the ل and *dim.* of وَرَاءَ — حَبِيرَةٌ — بَرِيئَةٌ and بَرِيْقَةٌ — لَغِيْفَةٌ

the abbreviated ا , (1) when fourth, to be retained in *dim.*, if for femininization—and converted into ي , if *rad.* or co-ordinative—*dims.* of عُلْقَى or عُلْقَى , or ذِفْرَى of ذِفْرَى , and of تَتْرَى or تَتْرَى —(2) when fifth, and not preceded by a letter of prolongation, and when sixth or seventh, to be elided—according to Y and Khl—reason of elision—(3) when fifth, but preceded by an *aug.* letter of prolongation, to be elided if that letter be retained, and retained if that letter be elided—*exs.*—the prolonged ا of femininization always retained—reason of retention —*dim.* of triptote *tril.* ending in two *augs.*, an ا and a Hamza, or an ا and a ي followed by the ة of femininization—*dims.* of غَوْغَاءَ or غَوْغَاءَ , and of قُوبَاءَ or قُوبَاءَ —the prolonged ا , the *aug.* ا and ن , the ي of relation, the signs of the *du.* and sound *pl. masc.* and *fem.*, and the ة of femininization to be disregarded in forming *dim.*—otherwise with the abbreviated ا —*dims.* of ظَرِيفَانِ , ظَرِيفُونَ , and ظَرِيفَاتٌ when generic *ns.*—and when proper names, according to Mb—and according to S—*dim.* of ثَلَاثُونَ when a generic *n.*, according to

Y—*dims.* of بَرَاكَة or جَلْوَلَة , of بَرَاكَة , and of قَرِيْنَاء according to the different opinions of S and Mb—*dim.* of فَعْلَاء —*dims.* of مَعْبُورَاء and مَعْلُوجَاء —of دَجَاجَة and دَجَاجَتَان —of جُبَلِيّ and مَنَهْرِيّ —the letter before the و of حُبَلِيّ why pronounced with Kasr in the *dim.* ... 1221—1239

- § 283. The *aug.* letter of prolongation and softness, when fourth in *n.* of five letters, to be retained in *dim.*—changed into ي if ا , or 'ا , and unchanged if ا ي —reason for retaining it—not changed into ي if letter after ي of *dim.* be not pronounced with Kasr—these predicaments applicable to every soft letter, and to mobile , and ي —the و of كَنَهْرٌ retained—*dim.* of قَرْقُورَة —the ي after the Kasra of the *dim.* when quiescent—single *aug.* of *tril.* not elided—one of two elided, when neither is letter of prolongation above mentioned—elision restricted to one—the two *augs.* equal or unequal in inseparability and utility—the less useful elided—*dims.* of مُخْتَارٌ —*dim.* of عَطْرٌ when a man's name—*dims.* of عَطْرٌ —either of two equal *augs.* elided—حَبَارِيّ

an instance—the *l* of ^١ثَمَانِيَّةٌ, ^٢عَلَانِيَّةٌ, and ^٣عَفَارِيَّةٌ preferably elided—the *y* elided by some—*dim.* of ^٤عَجَائِزُ or ^٥قَبَائِلُ when a man's name—*dim.* of ^٦مَطَايَا —how formed—^٧مُطَيَا not said—*dim.* of ^٨خَطَايَا —the two inferior *aug.* elided out of three—different opinions of S and Mb on *dim.* of ^٩مَقْعَنَسِسٌ —soft letter fourth not elided—*conj.* Hamza always elided—*dim.* of *tril.* containing four *aug.* inclusive of letter of prolongation—*dims.* of ^{١٠}اِعْلِرَاطٌ and ^{١١}اِضْطِرَابٌ —every *aug.* of *quad.* elided, except letter of prolongation described—*exs.* of *dim.* of augmented *quad.*—additional *exs.*—^{١٢}اِسْعِيلٌ and ^{١٣}اِبْرَهِيمٌ —*dims.* of ^{١٤}عُنَيْكِيَّةٌ according to S—and according to Mb—their *dims.* as heard from the Arabs—their *curt.* *dims.*—*dim.* of ^{١٥}اِسْتَبْرَقٌ —every *aug.* of *quin.* elided together with 5th *rad.*—rules for elision in *dim.* the same as in broken *pl.*—*exs.*—exceptions—why excepted—broken *pl.* and *dim.* of *pre.*—things not taken into account in forming *dim.*—dispute about equality of prolonged *l* with *ḥ* of femininization in this respect—

- opinion of IM—similar dispute about those *ns.* which are augmented by the sign of the *du.* or sound *pl.*, and whose third is a letter of prolongation, when orig. formed with the augment, or when used as proper names—this distinction not mentioned by IM here ... 1239—1253
- § 284. Compensation for elision—consists in insertion of a *ى* in the penultimate—is approved by Y and Khl—but not necessary—compensation good, but omission allowable—no compensation when paradigm is already نَعْيَعِيلٌ —the *ى* then not compensatory—restriction upon allowability of compensation ... 1254—1255
- § 285. *Dim.* of *quasi-pl. n.* and collective generic *n.* —of *pl.* of *quasi-pl. n.*—of *quasi-pl. n.* how formed by Akh—of sound and broken *pls.*—of broken *pl.* of multitude (1) not accompanied by a *pl.* of paucity of same crude-form— of شُعْرَاءُ and شُوعٌ — sound *pl.* allowable in *dim.*, though not allowable in *non-dim.*—(2) accompanied by a *pl.* of paucity—additional *exs.*—reason why *pl.* of multitude has no *dim.* formed directly from it—and why *quasi-pl. n.* and sound *pl.* have *dims.*— أَصِيلَانٌ or أَصِيلَالٌ —some *pls.* of multitude allowed by KK to

have *dims.*—refutation of their assertion that أَصِيلَان is an instance—*dims.* of شَقْرَان and سُودَان according to Ks and Fr—*dim.* of *pl.* of multitude that has no *sing.*—or only an irregular *sing.*—*dim.* of سَرَاوِيل—irregular *dims.* of some *pls.*—*dims.* of سِنُون and أَرْضُون—of سَنِين when not used as a proper name—أَرْضِين always used as a proper name—*dim.* of أَرْضِين or أَرْضُون when used as a proper name for a man or woman—of سِنُون or سَنِين when used as a proper name for a man or woman ... 1255—1263

§ 286. Anomalous *dims.* of *decl. n.*—*dims.* anomalous in form—like heteromorphous broken *pls.*—*dims.* of their *non-dims.* when used as names 1263—1267

§ 287. *Dims.* anomalous in sense—analysis of anomalous senses—*dim.* denoting *approximation*—مُتَّيِّلٌ and أَحْيَبِرٌ —أَسِيدٌ —meaning of *dim.* formation in أَمِيثَالٌ —*quals.*—in أَفْعَلٌ of superiority—in عَدُوٌ —in proper name and generic substantive... 1267—1270

§ 288. No *dim.* of *v.*—reason of this prohibition—*dim.* of *v.* of wonder anomalous—but allowed—reason of this exception—meaning of

- مَا أَمِيلَحَ —said only of the young—no
dim. of any *v.* or verbal *n.* except مَا أَفْعَلُ
 —no such *dim.* heard except in case of
 أَفْعَلُ of أَفْعَلُ and أَمْلَحَ —*dim.* of أَفْعَلُ of
 wonder held by the KK to be regular—not
 prevented from governing ... 1270—1271
- § 289. *Dims.* that have no *non-dim.*—كَبَيْتٌ—*pls.*
 of these *ns.*—how explained by R—سَكَيْتٌ
 —*dim.* of مَبِيْطٌ and مُسَيِّطٌ ... 1271—1273
- § 290. *Dim.* of prothetic or synthetic *comp.*—why
 formed only from first member—opinion of
 Fr on *dim.* of surname ... 1273—1274
- § 291. *Curt. dim.*—how formed—why named *curt.*—
 its forms—its paradigm when *non-dim.* has
 three *rad.*s.—*exs.*—no difference between co-
 ordinative and non-co-ordinative augments
 —its paradigm when *non-dim.* has four *rad.*s.
 —*exs.*—conditions of its formation—*curt.*
dim. when not practicable—difference be-
 tween *curt.* and *uncurt. dims.* of *quad.*—ة
 of femininization affixed to *curt. dim.* of *fem.*
 containing three *rad.*s.—*curt. dim.* of *eps.*
 peculiar to *fem.*—سَبِيْعٌ and بَرِيْعَةٌ —
 anomalous by common consent—different
 reasons for considering them anomalous—

	<i>curt. dim.</i> rare—allowed by Fr only in proper name—but by BB in other <i>ns.</i> —not really peculiar to proper names	... 1274—1278
§ 292.	<i>Ns.</i> that have no <i>dims.</i>	... 1278—1283
§ 293.	Properly no <i>dim.</i> of <i>uninfl. ns.</i> —classification of such <i>ns.</i> with regard to <i>dim.</i> — <i>indecl.</i> formations that have a <i>dim.</i> —formations added by Syt—a <i>dim.</i> allowed to ذَا , الَّذِي , and some of their <i>derivs.</i> —why to <i>dem.</i> —and why to some <i>conjuncts.</i> —a <i>dim.</i> not allowed to مَنْ or أَيَّ—nor to all <i>derivs.</i> of ذَا and الَّذِي—a <i>dim.</i> heard in five <i>dems.</i> and five <i>conjuncts</i> —points of agreement between <i>dim.</i> of these <i>ns.</i> and <i>dim.</i> of <i>decl. n.</i> —points of difference— <i>dims.</i> of <i>dems.</i> —no other <i>dems.</i> allowed a <i>dim.</i> —the <i>s</i> of premonition prefixed, and the ن of allocution and ل of distance affixed, to these <i>dims.</i> — <i>dims.</i> of <i>conjuncts</i> —الَّتِيَّاتُ— <i>dim.</i> of اللَّائِي or اللَّائِي not allowed by S—but allowed by Ahh—as also <i>dim.</i> of اللَّائِي — <i>dims.</i> of اللَّائِي and اللَّائِي , according to Akh—and of اللَّائِي according to Mz—اللَّوَيْتِيَا and اللَّوَيْتِيَا—all such forms fanciful— <i>dim.</i> <i>conjuncts</i> added in Tashil—R's theory on formation of <i>dim.</i> of vague <i>ns.</i>	... 1283—1294

CHAPTER XI.

THE RELATIVE NOUN.

- § 294. Definition—relation in need of a sign—the sign ا ی —the ی doubled—the letter before it pronounced with Kasr—the ی a p.—held by the KK to be a n. in position of a gen.—the *rel. n.* proper and improper—كُرْسِيّ and بَرْدِيّ — the ی sometimes used to distinguish between genus and individual—اَلْيَهُودُ and اَلْمَجُوسُ —uses of the ی like the ی of relation—the n. containing it not really a *rel. n.*—object and import of *rel. n.*—the *rel. n.* an *cp.*, governing an *ag.* in the *nom.*—but not governing a direct *obj.*—and only the particularizer of the vague substance denoted by it, or an *adv.* or *d. s.*—alterations produced by relation—additional alterations in some *ns.*—alterations regular and irregular—synopsis of alterations—elisions at end—and in penultimate—foregoing alterations regular—regular alterations to be first discussed ... 1295—1302
- § 295. The ة of feminization, and the sign of *du.* and sound *pl.*, to be elided—reason for elision of the ة —the ت in أُخْتٌ and خَلِيفَتِيّ and ذَاتِيّ to be elided—reason for elision of the ن —of

the ا, و, and ي —and of the ا and و —*rel. ns.* of عَانَات and اَذْرَعَات —
 elision of sign of *du.* and sound *pl.*, when
 used as names, and *infl.* as before such use—
 elision and retention of sign of *du.* and
 sound *pl. masc.*, when proper names—
 قَنَسْرِي and قَنَسْرِي —retention of و,
 and ن of sound *pl. masc.*—declension of
 سُنُون and similar proper names—
 and كُرُون, when not proper names, to be
 restored to *sing.*—*rel. n.* of قَمَرَات —of
 مُسَلِمَات and هِنْدَات —of ضَحَكَات
 سَرَادِقَات —predicament of *ns.* co-ordinated
 with *du.* and sound *pl.* ... 1302—1308

- § 296. Kasr of ع to be (1) altered into Fath in *rel.*
n. formed from unaugmented *tril.*—*rel. n.*
 of الْحَبِطَات—reason of alteration—its ne-
 cessity disputed—*rel. n.* of صَعِق —
 and صَعِقِي —(2) unaltered in
rel. n. formed from *n.* exceeding three
 letters—three formations of *n.* exceeding
 three letters, and having its penultimate
 pronounced with Kasr—vowel of penulti-
 mate unaltered in two formations, and
 preferably in third—Fath heard in three

words—its regularity disputed—correct
opinion 1308—1310

- § 297. The *ي* of *فَعِيلَةٌ* to be elided—formation of its *rel. n.*—anomalies—the *و* of *فَعُولَةٌ* elided by S—formation of its *rel. n.*—S's argument—Mb's opinion—distinction drawn by Mb between the *و* and *ي*, and the *Ḍamma* and *Kasra*—origin of the difference between the two opinions—*شَتَّى* why treated as regular by S—comparative merits of the two opinions—the *ي* of *فَعِيلَةٌ* to be elided—formation of its *rel. n.*—anomalies—two conditions of elision in *فَعِيلَةٌ* and *فَعِيلَةٌ*—and in *فَعُولَةٌ* according to S's opinion—no elision in *فَعِيلَةٌ* when *ع* is unsound, and *ل* sound—nor in *فَعِيلَةٌ*—otherwise when *ل* also is unsound—nor when *فَعِيلَةٌ* and *فَعِيلَةٌ* are reduplicated—*فَعُولَةٌ* like *فَعِيلَةٌ* in both conditions ... 1310—1314

- § 298. The *ي* in penultimate to be elided when pronounced with *Kasr*, and preceded by another *ي* incorporated into it, and followed by a sound letter—*exs.*—elision of *ي* pronounced with *Kasr* why unavoidable—predicament of final, if unsound—*ي* before final not to be

elided if single, or pronounced with Fath,
 or separated from final—*anomaly* in طَائِيّ
 —*alternative anomaly*—*opinion* of Z and
 IH on *rel. n.* of مَهْمٍ when *dim.* of
 مَهْمٍ —or of مَهْمٍ —based on *opinion* of S
 about *dim.* of عَطُون —*opinion* of Mb—*what*
 S actually says here—*what* his *opinion* may
 be—*preferable conjecture* as to his *opinion*
 —*rel. ns.* of غَزِيل and آيَم ... 1314—1319

- § 299. The ي of فَعِيل and فَعِيل, when unsound in
 the ل, to be elided—*formation* of their *rel.*
ns.—*reason* of the *elision* and *alteration*—
elision necessary according to some—*elision*
 or *retention* mentioned by others—أَمِيّ
 and غَنِيّ —and عَدِيّ heavier
 than أَمِيّ —*rel. n.* of كَسَا dim. of كَسَا
 —تَكَوِيّ —*rel. ns.* of قَسِيّ, أَمَوِيّ
 ثَدِيّ, and عَصِيّ when proper names—
 nothing elided from فَعِيل and فَعِيل when
 sound in the ل —according to *opinion* of S
 and IM—*elision* allowed by Mb and Sf—
 many instances heard in فَعِيل, but only
 one in فَعِيل —the, not elided from فَعُول,
 whether unsound or sound in the ل ... 1319—1322

- § 300. Final of *n*.—two kinds not altered in *rel. n*.
 —final | —its serial number — formation
 of word when final | is second—description
 of final | when third—when fourth
 —when fifth—and when sixth—treatment
 of final | in *rel. n*., (1) when second—⁶مَائِيَّةٌ
 and ⁶مَاهِيَّةٌ—similar treatment of final |, or ⁶ي
 when second—(2) when third—*rel. n*. of ⁶نَوَاةٌ
 —the | not elided—nor changed into Hamza
 —nor converted into ⁶ي —no difference
 between the | *orig.* , and the | *orig.* ⁶ي —
 difference in this respect between *rel. n*.
 and *du.*—the , of ²حَرِيٌّ not converted into |
 —(3) when fourth—abbreviated | of femi-
 nization allowably assimilated to con-
 verted, co-ordinative, or *rad.* |, or to pro-
 longed | of feminization, when second
 letter of word is quiescent—not when
 second is mobile—converted, co-ordinative,
 or *rad.* | assimilated to abbreviated or pro-
 longed | of feminization—dispute as to
 whether co-ordinative | be in predicament
 of | of feminization or of *rad.* | —“*rad.*”
 here meaning “converted from a *rad.*”—
 methods allowed by S, AZ, and Sf in
 co-ordinative and converted |s—(4) when
 fifth or upwards—²مُصْطَفَرِيٌّ a mistake
 —Y’s treatment of converted | fifth, when

preceded by double letter—his reasoning—objection by S—its refutation by R—further objection by S—condition prescribed for diptote declension of *fem.* bare of *ḡ*, when used as name for *masc.*—such *fem.* triptote when *tril.*—diptote when exceeding three letters—neither mobility of medial nor foreignness of any avail ... 1322—1331

- § 301. Final *ی* —final *و* —vowel of preceding letter—final *ی* single or double—final *و* also single or double—some final *ی* s and *و* s altered in *rel. n.*—single final *ی* preceded by mobile—vowel of that mobile—serial number of this *ی* —its predicaments, (1) when second—(2) when third—(3) when fourth—(4) when fifth or sixth—*rel. ns. of act. part.* *مَكِي* —this word not like *مَهِي* —dispute as to which of its *rel. ns.* is better—combination of four *ی* s why allowable in *مَكِي* —*rel. ns. of pass. part.* *مَكِي* —treatment of single final *و* when third or upwards, and preceded by letter pronounced with Damm.—reason for this treatment—consequent formation of *rel. n.*... 1331—1337
- § 302. Predicament of final *و* and *ی* preceded by quiescent—such *و* not altered in *rel. n.*—reason for this—the *ی* also unaltered, when third, and preceded by sound quiescent, if

n. be bare of the *š*—*exs.* of , and *ی*—dispute about *n.* containing the *š*—opinion of Khl and S—practice of IAl related by Y to S—opinion of Y—his opinion peculiar to *tril.* containing the *š*—its foundation—Zj' argument in support of it—no argument transmitted from Y—partial excuse for Y suggested by Khl—opinion preferred by Khl—*بَدَوِي*²—such the predicament of the *ی* third, when preceded by sound quiescent—description of preceding quiescent, when unsound—its mobilization when a *ی*—its consequent return to its *o. f.* if *orig.* a , —conversion of final *ی* into , —the *ع* not converted into | —*rel. ns.* of *حَيَّة*⁹ and *لَيَّة*⁹ —*حَيَّ*² and *لَيَّ*² worse than *أَمَيَّ*² —final *ی* properly left unaltered when preceding quiescent is an | —the *ع* not pronounced with Fath here—final *ی* allowably converted into Hamza—or into , —such the treatment of the *ی* when third—its treatment when fourth—reason for its conversion into Hamza after an *aug.* | —the , of *شَقَاوَة*⁹ not converted—the *ی* of *سَقَايَة*⁹ sometimes converted into , —treatment of the *ی* when fifth, and preceded by an *aug.* | —predicament of the *ی* preceded

- by a quiescent **ي** when fourth—and when fifth or sixth ... 1337—1344
- § 303. Final double **ي** —its predicament, (1) when fourth—based on what theory—(2) when fifth—*rel. n.* and *n.* related to, though literally uniform, constructively different—explanation of difference—effect of difference on declension of *rel. n.* from **بَخَاتِي** when used as a name—reason of restriction “when used as a name”—further restriction imposed by IHsh ... 1340—1347
- § 304. The **ا** before final Hamza—final Hamza preceded (1) by *aug. ا*—declension of *ns.* ending in such Hamza—predicament of Hamza in *rel. n.* the same as in regular *du.*—detailed description of its treatment in *rel. n.*—its predicament in anomalous *du.* not imitated in *rel. n.*—comparative merits of conversion and preservation—treatment of Hamza when it does not denote feminization, but the *n.* is *fem.*—(2) by *unaug. ا*—**مَارِي** and **شَارِي**—IHsh’s opinion on *rel. n.* of **مَاء**—*rel. ns.* of **مَاء** and **شَاء** when used as names—difference between opinions of IHsh and A. ... 1347—1351
- § 305. *Rel. ns.* in *cat.* of **سَقَايَة** and **عَظَايَة** —of **رَايَة** and **رَاي** —**شَقَارَة** and **غَبَارَة** —of **رَايَة** and **رَاي** —

description of *cats.* of سَقَايَةٌ and شَقَاوَةٌ —
and of رَايَ and رَايَةٌ —formation of their
rel. ns. already explained ... 1351—1352

- § 306. Final of *bil.*—*bil. n.* of two kinds—first kind constitutionally *uninfl.*—*rel. n.* when formed from it—doubling of its final, if sound, said to be optional in *rel. n.*—doubling of final necessary in *bil.* used as proper name for its expression, and intended to be *infl.* —*rel. n.* of اللَّاتُ, of كَيْ, and of فِي—foundation of this doctrine—doubling of final in *bil.* used as proper name for something else, and intended to be *infl.*, disallowed if final be sound, and necessary if final be unsound—no doubling of final in *bil.* used as proper name, but not intended to be *infl.* —inaccuracy of statement that doubling of final, if sound, is optional—doubling of final, if a soft letter, in word constitutionally *bil.*, when used as a name, precedes formation of *rel. n.*—لَاوِي disallowed by some as *rel. n.* of لَ—second kind of *bil.*—letter elided from it—classification of *infl. bil. n.* in respect of restoration of its elided letter in *rel. n.*—elided ف not restored in *rel. n.* if ف be sound—but restored if ف be unsound—reason of its restoration—original quiescence

of ع not restored by S after restoration of ف
—but restored by Akh—elided ف restored
by Fr, whether ل be sound or unsound, but
put after the ل —his authority for this
practice—elided ع not restored when ل is
sound—restriction on this rule—but res-
tored when ل is unsound—elided ل when
restored, and when omitted—*rel. ns.* of
شَفَى — *rel. ns.* of هَن — criticism
on IM's reference to sound *pl. masc.* for indi-
cation of restoration of ل —device adopted
by IH in order to dispense with reference
to *du.* and *pl.*—futility of this device—the
ل sometimes biform—*rel. n.* of فَم —original
quiescence of ع not restored by S and most
GG after restoration of ل —but restored by
Akh—opinion of S preferable—objection
raised by some—groundlessness of this
objection—*rel. n.* of *tril.* where ل is elided,
and *conj.* Hamza put at beginning as com-
pensation for it—*rel. n.* of اِثْنَانِ or اِثْنَا عَشَرَ
when a man's name—of اِمْرُو الْقَيْسِ and اِمْرُو
— *مرَّتِي* —its ر why pronounced with
Fath—vowels of the ر in اِمْرُو transmitted
by Fr—*rel. n.* of اِبْنِم —forms allowed by
Khl—اِبْنِي not used by the Arabs ... 1352—1367

- § 307. *Rel. ns.* of بِنْتٌ and أُخْتُ disputed—and of كَيْتٌ, ذَيْتٌ, and كَلْتَا —limits of dispute on *rel. n.* of ثِنْتَانِ —the ت elided, and the ل restored—reason of elision,—reversion of *tril.* to *masc.* formation on elision of ت —all these *ns. orig. masc.*—*o. f.* of بِنْتٌ and أُخْتُ —transfer of their measure from فَعْلٌ to فَعْلٌ and فَعْلٌ —their ت not really for femininization—this the opinion of S—its bearing on their declension when used as proper names for a man—*rel. ns.* of بِنْتٌ and أُخْتُ according to Khl and S—reason of this formation—*rel. ns.* of كَيْتٌ, ثِنْتَانِ and ذَيْتٌ, and كَلْتَا, according to S—the “*masc.*” of كَيْتٌ and ذَيْتٌ —these formations all to be reduced to *masc.*—*masc.* of بِنْتٌ or ابْنَةٌ —of أُخْتُ —of ثِنْتَانِ —and of هَنْتٌ —all these *ns. orig.* mobile in the ع except كَيْتٌ and ذَيْتٌ —prove of this in كَلْتَا —restoration of ل necessary—even in بِنْتٌ —*rel. ns.* of بِنْتٌ and أُخْتُ according to Y—his argument—how avoided—Khl’s objection—*o. f.* of هَنْتٌ and مَنَّتٌ —distinction between

their **ت** and that of **بِنْتٌ** and **أُخْتُ**—*rel. ns.*
 of **كُنَيْتَ**, **كُنَيْتَ**, **كُنَيْتَ**, and **كُنَيْتَ**, accord-
 ing to Y—Z's statement on *rel. ns.* of **كُنَيْتَ**—
 nothing actually said by Y about *rel. n.* of
كُنَيْتَ—*rel. ns.* of **بِنْتٌ**, **أُخْتُ**, and correspond-
 ing *ns.*, according to Akh—the **ت** and **ل** of
كُنَيْتَ according to apparent opinion of S—its
ل—combination of its **ت** with the **ل** of femi-
 nization—formation of its *rel. n.*—its
rel. n. according to Jr—refutation of his
 opinion—declension of **كُنَيْتَ** when used as
 a man's name, according to conflicting
 opinions of S and Jr—the **ت** a substitute
 for the **ل** according to the general opinion—
 difference of this opinion from apparent
 opinion of S—*rel. n.* of **كُنَيْتَ** according
 to it—statement of Sf—additional *rel. ns.*
 allowable according to his statement—**كُنَيْتَ**
 not to be reckoned, according to this opinion,
 among *ns.* whose **ل** is elided—*rel. ns.* of **أُبْنَةُ** 1368—1376

- § 308. *Rel. n.* of *comp.* to be formed from first
 member—the second to be elided—*exs.*—
 one member why elided—the second why
 selected—this formation regular in synthetic
comp.—additional formations—their ano-
 malousness—no *rel. n.* formed from *comp.*
num. when used as a *num.*—reason for this
 —*rel. n.* of such *num.* allowed by AHM—

additional formation allowed in *rel. n.* of
prop. by Jr—and by AHm—^{كُنْتِي} —
 anomalous—^{كُونِي} —not ^{كَانِي} —^{كُنْتِي} —
rel. ns. of ^{لَوَلَا} , ^{إِنَّمَا} , and the like, when
 used as names—the ^و of ^{لَوِي} why not
 doubled—extent of elision in *rel. n.* of
prop. ... 1376—1382

- § 309. *Rel. n.* of prothetic *comp.* to be formed from
 one of the two members—meaning of “pro-
 thetic *comp.*” here—*rel. n.* why formed
 from *pre.* or *post.* alone—*rel. n.* preferably
 formed from *pre.*—*exs.*—evidentiary verses
 —*rel. n.* necessarily formed from *post.* when
 ambiguity produced by forming it from
pre. would be great—generally formed from
pre., sometimes from *post.*, when such ambi-
 guity would not be great—this the rule
 laid down by S—different rule propounded
 by Mb, and adopted by Z—objection to it
 —Sf’s refutation of it—true rule—IH’s
 reply to Sf—rejoinder open to Sf—refutation
 of IH’s statement—*rel. n.* sometimes ano-
 malously compounded of *pre.* and *post.*—
rel. n. of ^{أَمْرُ الْقَيْسِ} —instances of such
 composition—this formation adopted to
 avoid ambiguity—excuse for it—^{تَعَبَّشَمَ}
 and ^{عَبَّشَمَسَ} —^{تَعَبَّقَسَ} ... 1382—1388

- § 10. *Rel. n.* of collective generic *n.* and *quasi-pl.*
n.—*rel. ns.* of ^{نَقَرٌ} and ^{رَهْطٌ} —*rel. n.*

of *pl.—rel. n.* of أَبْنَاءُ — الرَّبَابِ and
 أَنْصَارٍ — another explanation of these two
rel. ns. and رَبَائِي — objection to this
 explanation—*rel. ns.* of أَبْنَاءُ فَارِسَ or
 أَبْنَاءُ الْفَرَسِ — *rel. n.* of الْعَبَلَاتِ — of
 الْمَسَامِعَةِ and الْمَهَالِبَةِ — alternative expla-
 nation of such *rel. ns.* ... 1388—1395

§ 311. Anomalous *rel. ns.*—irregular alterations—
 analysis of irregularities—irregular *rel. ns.*
 numerous—some previously mentioned, and
 the rest now given—*exs.* of irregular
 alterations—some of these expressions more
 anomalous than others—their reversion to
 regular forms—two formations of *rel. n.*
 indicative of *bigness*—neither regular—the
 ا and ن affixed in *rel. n.* to limited number
 of *ns.*, to denote *intensiveness*—reversion of
 their *rel. ns.* to regular form when *inten-*
siveness not intended—as when these *ns.* are
 used as names ... 1397—1413

§ 312. *Rel. n.* sometimes formed upon measure of
 فَاعِلٌ — فَعِلٌ — فَاعِلٌ or فَعَالٌ here
 not participial—فَعَالٌ used for *crafts* or
trades—exs. of فَاعِلٌ — *ex.* of فَعَالٌ — *ex.*

of فَعْلٌ —meaning of فَاعِلٌ or فَعِلٌ,	
and of فَعَّالٌ —use of فَاعِلٌ in place of فَعَّالٌ, and the converse—the latter usage anomalous, according to some—dispute on this point — text so explained—	
difference in meaning between فَاعِلٌ and فَعَّالٌ when used in the sense of <i>possessor</i> —	
their form— <i>ex.</i> —sometimes both used—	
sometimes only one—sometimes ordinary form of <i>rel. n.</i> used—فَاعِلٌ and فَعَّالٌ why	
said to be i. q. the <i>rel. n.</i> —how distinguishable from <i>act. part.</i> and intensive form thereof—	
شُغِّلَ شَاغِلٌ — تَمَّ تَمَامُهُ and جَدَّ جِدُّهُ	
— فَعْلٌ also used in sense of <i>rel. n.</i>	
—sense of <i>rel. n.</i> found in <i>act. part.</i> of unaugmented or augmented <i>tril.</i> , and in three intensive forms of <i>act. part.</i> —opinion of Khl on رَاضِيَةٌ عَيْشَةٌ and طَاعِمٌ كَاسٌ —	
evidentiary verse—this verse alluded to by Z—other explanations of طَاعِمٌ and كَاسٌ —	
مُفْعِلٌ and مُفْعَلٌ also used as <i>rel. ns.</i> —	
some of foregoing formations extensively used—but none regular—this the opinion of S—فَعَّالٌ regular, according to Mb—	
الْفَرَاءُ and الْكَسَائِي	... 1413—1423

CHAPTER XII.

THE NUMERAL NOUN.

- § 313. Definition—explanation of terms—distinction between *num.* and *pl.*—peculiar predicaments of *nums.*—elementary *nums.*—number in each scale—derivation of composite from elementary *nums.*—**وَاحِدٌ — اِثْنَانِ — اَحَدٌ** — its *fem.*—the *num.* generally accompanied by a *n.* specifying the *genus numbered*—exception in case of **وَاحِدٌ** and **اِثْنَانِ**—reason of this exception—anomalous expression of *sp.* with **اِثْنَانِ**—numerical exponent superfluous for *prcn.* in *du.*—necessary for *pron.* in *pl.*—explanation of difference 1423—1426
- § 314. Predicaments of *nums.*—their gender—R's explanation of peculiarities in their gender — **عَشْرُ امْثَالِهَا** VI. 161. how justified by IHsh—and by others—the numbered hitherto assumed to be mentioned—such mention restricted by Sfw to mention after the *num.*—refutation of this restriction—gender of *num.* when numbered is not mentioned, but understood—apparent opinion of Fk—gender of *num.* when

understood numbered is (1) the word أَيَّامٌ —theory of Sb—summary of his argument —his reference to the opinions of S and Z—actual words of Z—criticism of Sb on latitude allowed by Nw—(2) a word other than أَيَّامٌ —dispute as to allowability of *fem.* gender in *num.* when understood numbered is *fem.*—gender of *num.* importing *unrestricted number*—gender to be regarded when numbered is (1) a *pl.*—opinions of the Bdd and Ks and Fr—according as *sing.* is substantive or *ep.*—(2) a collective generic *n.*, or a *quasi-pl. n.*—*exs.* with such *ns.*—exceptions—(3) a proper name—(4) of both genders ... 1426—1442

§ 315. What *nums.* do not, and what *nums.* do, need a *sp.*—what *nums.* are *pre.* to their numbered ... 1442—1443

§ 316. Case and number of *sp.* of *nums.* (1) from 3 to 10—when their *sp.* is (a) a collective generic *n.*, or a *quasi-pl. n.*—(b) not such a *n.*—peculiar treatment of مِائَةٌ as a *sp.*—مِائَةٌ and أَلْفٌ used as *sp.* for what *num.* —مِائَةٌ written united with its *num.*—(2) from 11 to 99—explanation of a text

where *sp.* is apparently *pl.*—*sp.* not separable from its *num.*—(3) for 100 and 1000—number of *ep.* of *sing. sp.*—and of other *apposs.* of such *sp.*—dispute as to whether *sp.* of any *num.* may be an *ep.* ... 1443—1454

- § 317. The *sp.* of *nums.* from 3 to 10 mostly a broken *pl.*—sound *pl.* when a *sp.*—*nums.* from 3 to 10 *pre.* to sound *pl.* in three cases—sound *pl.* then preferable or necessary—in other cases rare—weak when an *ep.*—*sp.* of *nums.* from 3 to 10 when a *pl.* of paucity, and when a *pl.* of multitude—ثَلَاثَةٌ قُرُوءٌ II. 228—Mb's opinion—*nums.* from 3 to 10 when *pre.* to *pl.* of multitude—objections to explanation of ثَلَاثَةٌ قُرُوءٌ adopted by IHsh and A—language of R and BD ... 1454—1457

- § 318. The *comp. nums.*—cause of uninflectedness in last member—and in first—اِثْنَا عَشَرَ and اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ—another explanation of uninflectedness in first member—*exs.*—opinion of KK—the *num.* sometimes *pre.* to owner of numbered—such prefixion applicable to what *nums.*—its effect on uninflectedness of each member of *comp. num.*—prefixion of first member to second,

without prefixion of whole to something
 else, said by IM to be disallowed by com-
 mon consent—his assertion of common
 consent questioned ... 1457—1461

§ 319. Treatment of *عَشْرَة* of ش in composition—
 of ش of *عَشْر* —of ع of *عَشْر* —Dm's
 explanation of the last—treatment of *ي* of
ثَمَانِي in composition—and of ن —*ثَمَانِي*
 without composition—like *أَلْجَوَارُ* —opi-
 nion of H—and of KK, as noted by IBr
 —such elision of *ي* not peculiar to poetry
 —analogous elision in other *ns.* ... 1461—1465

§ 320. Gender of *عِشْرُونَ* and similar *nums.*, to
تِسْعُونَ —*masc.* gender universally predo-
 minant in Arabic over *fem.*—except in two
 cases, the word *ضَبْعَانِ* and the system of
 dating—*fem.* here said by many to pre-
 dominate over *masc.*—erroneous to regard
 the system of dating as a case of predomi-
 nance—demonstration of this error—
 reason why the Arabs date by nights—
 true case of predominance of *fem.* over
masc. in dating—condition requisite for a
 case of predominance in gender—gender

of *num.* having *sps.* of different genders—
distribution of the number among such
sps.—explanation of such idioms—unit not
compounded with عَشْرُونَ and other *nums.*

of its *cat.*—بُضْعٌ — predicament of بُضْعٌ
and بُضْعَةٌ — used with what decimal
numbers 1465—1471

§ 321. Uninflectedness of *nums.* in enumeration—

ثَلَاثَهْرَبَة — and of letters of alphabet, and
the like, when simply enumerated—*dial.*
vars. of the ى — names of letters when
infl.—*ns.* are *orig.* *infl.*—except *ejs.* and
names of letters—Fath of م in اَلَيْمِ اَللّٰهُ

III. 1.—why not Kasr—modifications in
finals of names of letters when *infl.*—
treatment of such names when transferred
to *cat.* of *ns.*—*nums.* when *infl.* ... 1471—1474

§ 322. وَاحِدٌ — meaning and use—broken *pl.*—
assimilate *ep.*—change of the و — اَحَدٌ
and اِحْدَى preferred in combination with
a decimal *num.*—وَاحِدٌ and وَاحِدَةٌ
sometimes found—وَاحِدٌ عَشَرَ — use of
اِحْدَى and اَحَدٌ when *pre.*—of اِحْدَى

when not *pre.*—of أَحَدٌ, when not *pre.*, to denote *generality*, in *non-aff.* phrase—أَحَدٌ rarely then made *det.*—the *neg.* sometimes posterior to it—this use of أَحَدٌ not found in *aff.* phrase—use of وَاحِدٌ and وَاحِدَةٌ to denote *generality*—opinion of F on Hamza of أَحَدٌ denoting *totality*—refutation of this opinion—أَحَدٌ sometimes used as i. q. وَاحِدٌ — أَحَدُ الْأَحْدِينَ and إِحْدَى الْأَحَدِ — meaning of the latter—*ex.*—application to *masc.*—explanation of genders in these two expressions—إِحْدَى الْآحَادِ — other words used like أَحَدٌ, in non-affirmation, to denote *totality*—21 mentioned by R—9 others by ISk—3 more by KI ... 1474—1483

§ 323. The *num.* how made *det.* ... 1483—1484

§ 324. Ordinals of *nums.* from 1 to 19—from 20 to 90, and of 100 and 1000—of cardinal *nums.* coupled together—*act. part.* derived from *nums.*—its formation—الْأَوَّلُ not one—nor وَاحِدٌ — R's opinion on وَاحِدٌ — gender of *act. part.*—its *fem.* ... 1485—1486

- § 325. This *act. part.* how used—عَشْرَنَ, etc.,
and مَعْشَرَنَ, etc. ... 1486—1495
- § 325. A. Distributive *nums.*—وَاحِدٌ وَاحِدٌ,
etc.—وَاحِدَانِ—meaning of distributive
nums.—*exs.*—scholars not agreed upon
distributives used by the Arabs—opinion
of majority—statement of IA—of KhA—
AlMutanabbi's use of أَحَادٌ and سُدَّاسٌ for
وَاحِدَةٌ and سِتٌّ respectively—أَحَادٌ said
to occur in the sense of وَاحِدٌ ... 1495—1498
- § 325. B. Dates reckoned by nights, not days
—method of dating—month how expressed
to be complete—number of *v.* used in
dating ... 1498—1501

CHAPTER XIII.

THE ABBREVIATED AND PROLONGED NOUNS.

- § 326. Definition of abbreviated—pronunciation,
not orthography, to be considered—final
! —(1) converted—(2) *aug.*—*decl. n.* when
named abbreviated—definition of prolonged
—! before final Hamza—final Hamza
—such *ns.* as مَلَأَ not named prolonged—

- nor such as شَاءَ and شَاءَ —*vs.*, *ps.*, and
indecl. ns. not called abbreviated or pro-
 longed—only *decl. ns.* so called—هَوَّلَا'
 and هَوَّلَا' —abbreviation and prolong-
 ation regular or known by hearsay ... 1502—1503
- § 327. Unsound *n.* ending in ! —first kind—its
 abbreviation regular—*exs.*—additional *exs.* 1503—1505
- § 328. Second kind—its prolongation regular—
exs.—additional *exs.* ... 1506—1507
- § 329. Third kind—its abbreviation or prolonga-
 tion known by hearsay—*exs.* of abbreviat-
 ed—of prolonged ... 1508
- § 329. A. Abbreviation of prolonged—disallowed,
 in some cases, by Fr—his opinion refuted—
 prolongation of abbreviated—allowed by
 majority of KK, unrestrictedly—distinc-
 tion drawn by Fr—disallowed by majority
 of BB, unrestrictedly—apparently allow-
 able, unrestrictedly—opinion of IW and
 IKh ... 1508—1511

CHAPTER XIV.

THE NOUNS CONNECTED WITH VERBS.

- § 330. Meaning of the description “connected with
 verbs”—classification of these *ns.* ... 1512

THE INFINITIVE NOUN.

- § 331. Definition—*accident*—conformability—*inf.*
n.'s conformability to *v.*—alternative
 meaning of such conformability—perfect
 definition of *inf. n.*—originality or deri-
 vativeness of *inf. n.*, *v.*, and *qual.*—*inf. n.*
 why named مَصْدَرٌ, according to (1) the
 BB—(2) the KK—refutation of KK's
 opinion—other names of *inf. n.*—its form
 in unaugmented *tril.*—prevalent forma-
 tions—other formations—*ex.*— فَعَالَةٌ in
crafts or *offices*—regular— فَعَالَةٌ a
 occasional *var.*— فِعَالٌ in *fright* and *excitement*
 —in *sounds*—and, with فَعَالٌ, in *non-inf.*
ns. denoting *time*, or *season*, for act—
inf. n. in such cases فَعْلٌ — فِعَالٌ in *brands*
 — فُعَالٌ and فَعَالٌ in *ailments*— and, with
 فَعِيلٌ, in *sounds*— فُعَالٌ and فَعَالَةٌ in
non-inf. ns.— فَعْلَانٌ and فُعَالٌ in *violent*
motion— فُعْلَةٌ — شَتَانٌ — فَعْلٌ and
 فُعْلَةٌ and فَعَالٌ in *colors*— فُعْلَةٌ in *defects*
 — فُعْلَةٌ and فَعْلَةٌ in *position of act*—
 فُعْلَةٌ in *superfluity*— فَعْلٌ in *ailments*—

فَعَل regular <i>inf. n.</i> of <i>trans.</i> فَعَلَ or فَعِل	
—assertion that it is not regular—when allowable, according to S and Akh—other opinions—condition prescribed, in the Tashil, in case of فَعَلَ — فَعَلَ regular <i>inf. n.</i> of <i>intrans.</i> فَعِل — and فَعُول of <i>intrans.</i> فَعَلَ —opinion of Fr— فَعَال — فَعِيل and فَعِيل sometimes combined, sometimes separate— فَعَالَة — فَعَالَة or فَعُولَة regular <i>inf. n.</i> of فَعَلَ — most prevalent measures in <i>inf. n.</i> of فَعَلَ — rule in <i>inf. n.</i> of <i>tril.</i> —irregular <i>inf. ns.</i> — فَعُل, فَعِل, and فَعِل as <i>inf. ns.</i> of فَعَلَ — فَعَل — تُقَى — فَعِل as <i>inf. n.</i> of فَعَلَ — فَعِل as <i>inf. n.</i> of فَعَلَ —Fr's opinion on غَلَبَ — فَعْلَانُ — فَعِل — فَعِل i. q. مَفْعُول — and فَعِل — فَعِل i. q. مَفْعُول, and فَعِل i. q. مَفْعُول —some of these measures not <i>inf. ns.</i> 1513—1529	

§ 332. *Inf. n.* of augmented *tril.*, and of unaugmented and augmented *quad.*—each *conjug.*

provided with appropriate form of *inf. n.*
 —such forms all reducible to one rule—
 whereby regular *inf. n.* may be known
 when *v.* is known—irregular *inf. ns.* more
 notorious in some *conjugs.* than regular
 — **فَعَالٌ** — regular *inf. ns.* confined to
 hearsay in some *conjugs.*—sole *inf. n.* of
 some *conjugs.* irregular—detailed explana-
 tion—classification of *vs.* exceeding 3
 letters—*inf. ns.* of (1) augmented *tril.*
 commensurable, and coordinated, with
quad.—(2) augmented *tril.* commensur-
 able, but not coordinated, with *quad.*—
 (a) **أَفْعَلٌ** —distinction between coordinated
 and commensurable—(b) **تَفْعِيلٌ** — **فَعَلٌ**
 and **تَفْعِلَةٌ** —which used when *ل* is a
 Hamza—opinion of S—**فَعَالٌ** —in *non-*
inf. n.— **فَعَالٌ** and **تَفْعَالٌ** said to be
 anomalous— **كَذَابٌ** — (c) **فَاعِلٌ** —its
 simple substantive— **مُفَاعَلَةٌ** and **فَعَالٌ** —
مِرَاءٌ — **فِيْعَالٌ** — (3) augmented *tril.*
 incommensurable with *quad.*—beginning
 with (a) *aug.* ت — (α) **تَفْعَلٌ** —
 —said to be anomalous—(b) **تَفَاعَلٌ** —

فَعِيلٌ anomalous—(b) <i>conj.</i> Hamza— <i>exs.</i>	
— <i>inf. ns.</i> of such <i>vs.</i> as أَطَايَرَ and أَطَيْرَ —	
(4) unaugmented <i>quad.</i> and its coordinates	
—instances of فَعْلَالٌ in non-reduplicated—	
فَعْلَالٌ and فَعْلَلَةٌ — حَيْقَالٌ — دِحْرَاجٌ —	
حَرْقَالٌ — only in reduplicated— فَعْلَالٌ —	
<i>o. f.</i> فَعْلَالٌ — فَعْلَالٌ an <i>inf. n.</i> and فَعْلَالٌ	
a simple substantive — usual meaning of	
فَعْلَالٌ — or فَعْلَالٌ and فَعْلَالٌ both <i>inf. ns.</i> —	
قُرْنُصَاءَ and قَهْقَرَى — (5, augmented <i>tril.</i>	
or <i>quad.</i> beginning with ت of quasi-passi-	
vity — on measure of تَفَعَّلَ — forma-	
tions — effect of unsoundness of ل — (6)	
augmented <i>quad.</i> on measure of (a)	
طَبَائِنَةٌ — اِفْعَلَّ — اِسْتَفْعَلْتُ —	
قَشْعَرِيرَةٌ 1529—1545	

- § 333. *Inf. n.* on measure of (1) مَفْعَلٌ — sometimes with ة of femininization — مَفْعَلٌ regular as *inf. n.* of unaugmented *tril.* — vowel of its ع — (2) *pass. part.* — *pass. part.* of *v.* exceeding 3 letters used as *inf. n.*, *n.* of *time*, and *n.* of *place* — *inf. n.* on measure of مَفْعُولٌ rare — disallowed by S — his ex-

planations of apparent instances—مَكْرُوهَةٌ
and مَصْدُوقَةٌ—*inf. n.* on measure of فَاعِلَةٌ
rarer—كَاذِبَةٌ — فَاضِلَةٌ — بَاقِيَةٌ — عَاقِبَةٌ —
all with the ة — (3) *act. part.*—*exs.*—*act.*
part., in some of these *exs.*, otherwise ex-
plicable as *d. s.*—*inf. n.* used in sense of
act. or *pass. part.*—its gender and number
in such cases—its presence otherwise ex-
plicable by suppression of a *pre. n.*—use of
inf. n. as *act.* or *pass. part.* hyperbolic 1545—1559

- § 334. تَفْعَالٌ —held by S to be an intensive *inf. n.*
of unaugmented *tril.*—not regular, though
frequent—and by KK to be *orig.* an *inf.*
n. of فَعَلَ—S's opinion preferable—vowel
of initial in تَفْعَالٌ when an *inf. n.*—تَفْعَالٌ
as an *inf. n.*—تَشْرَابٌ — تَلْقَاءٌ — تَبْيَانٌ
—instances of تَفْعَالٌ in *inf.* and *non-inf.*
ns. 1559—1561

- § 335. فِعْيَلِي —its sense—*exs.*—an *inf. n.* in what
conjugs.—خَلِيفِي — فِعْيَلِي not regular
—its |—prolongation of its | disputed ... 1562—1563

- § 336. *N. un.*—إِتْيَانَةٌ and لِقَاءَةٌ — properly أَنْبَاءٌ
and لَقِيَةٌ —*n. un.* from unaugmented *tril.*
whose *inf. n.* contains ة —opinion of IH

—of S—of Z—of IM—of BD and IHsh
 —of R—*n. un.* how indicated when
 general *inf. n.* is on measure of **فَعْلَةٌ** —
 how formed from *v.* other than unaugmented
tril.—*n. un.* evidence that *inf. n.* of
 whole *tril.*, *trans.* or *intrans.*, is orig. **فَعَلَ**
 —*n. un.* how formed from *quad.* or aug-
 mented *tril.* having two *inf. ns.*—*n. un.*
 and *n. mod.* really sorts of *inf. n.*—*n. un.*
 confined to what indicates *physical action* 1563—1567

§ 337. *N. mod.* from unaugmented *tril.*—*n. mod.*
 how indicated when general *inf. n.* is on
 measure of **فَعْلَةٌ** —or when *v.* is not an
 unaugmented *tril.*—anomalous from *non-*
tril.—meaning of **فَعْلَةٌ** — **فَعْلَةٌ** sometimes
 not a *n. un.*, nor **فَعْلَةٌ** a *n. mod.* ... 1567—1569

§ 338. *Inf. n.* of **فَعَلَ** unsound in **ل**—how formed
 — extraordinary exception — explanation
 of exception—dispute as to letter elided—
 R's opinion—*inf. n.* of **أَفْعَلَ** and **اِسْتَفْعَلَ**
 unsound in **ع**—how formed—dispute as to
 letter elided—omission of compensation for
 elided letter—omission allowed in *inf. n.* of
أَفْعَلَ and **اِسْتَفْعَلَ**—not in *inf. n.* of **فَعَلَ**—
 difference between them—poetic license ... 1569—1572

- § 339. *Ns.* that govern like the *v.*—meaning of “*ns.*” here—reason for beginning with *inf. n.*—*inf. n.* like *v.* in government—*intrans.* and *trans.*—character of its government—augmented *inf. n.* like un-augmented in government—differences between *inf. n.* and *v.*—dispute as to *inf. n.*’s governing a *pro-ag.* in the *nom.*—*inf. n.* not altered when attributed to *pro-ag.*—conditions of its government—*op. inf. n.* must be *sing.*—this condition why adopted by IM—states of *op. inf. n.*—comparative frequency and validity of its government when it is (1) *pre.* to the *ag.*—(2) *pre.* to the *obj.*—(3) pronounced with Tanwīn—(4) synarthrous—distinction between *pre.* and synarthrous—government of synarthrous *inf. n.* in Kūr—disputes as to government of *inf. n.* when *pre.*—when pronounced with Tanwīn—when synarthrous—constructions employed with *pre. inf. n.* ... 1572—1591
- § 340. Inflectional place of *n. post.* to *inf. n.*—case of its *appos.*—apposition to place ... 1591—1594
- § 341. Government of *inf. n.* not conditional on its time—difference, in this respect, be-

- tween *inf. n.* and *act. part.*—cause of difference 1594—1595
- § 342. *Inf. n.* not (1) preceded by its *reg.*—nor (2) separated from its *reg.* by extraneous expression—meaning of “extraneous” and “non-extraneous”—supposed instances of such constructions—of precedence—of separation by extraneous expression—nor (3) suppressed whilst its *reg.* remains—opinion of R on (1) precedence of *reg.*—the truth, according to Sd—(2) separation by extraneous expression—(3) government by understood *inf. n.*—predicaments of *inf. n.* occurring as substitute for expression of its *v.*, in respect of (1) assumption of *pron.*, and (2) precedence of *reg.* 1595—1601
- § 342A. *Quasi-inf. n.*—defined by IM—formations excluded from definition — كَمَلٌ — كَمَلٌ—government of *quasi-inf. n.*—*op. quasi-inf. n.* defined by IHsh—classification of *quasi-inf. n.*—its government rare—allowability disputed—opinion of IM—of author of Basit 1601—1605

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

- § 343. *Act. part.* defined—illustration—some *act. parts.* excluded from this definition—*act.*

part. often not denotative of *origination*
—definition given in *Tashīl*—in *Aud*—for-
mation of *act. part.* of (1) unaugmented
tril.—(a) *trans.* or *intrans.* فَعَلَ, and
trans. فَعَلَ —(b) *intrans.* فَعِلَ, and فَعِلَ—
exceptional *act. parts.* of فَعَلَ—فَاعِلٌ only
real *act. part.* of unaugmented *tril.*—*act.*
part. why named اِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ — (2) *v.* other
than unaugmented *tril.*—exceptional *act.*
parts. of أَفْعَلَ—anomalous *Kasr* of م in
مُفْعِلٌ—*act. part.* said to be sometimes (1)
in sense of *pass. part.*—(2) on measure of
pass. part.—government of *act. part.*—
precedence of its *reg.*—its government of
all complements—cause of its government
—intensive paradigm—illustrations—
government of intensive paradigm—con-
ditions of its government — *exs.* — *ex.*
showing precedence of *reg.*—government
of فَعَّالٌ, مُفْعَالٌ, and فَعُولٌ frequent—of
فَعَّالٌ even regular—of فَعِيلٌ and فَعِلٌ rare
—of فَعِلٌ much rarer than of فَعِيلٌ — *exs.*
—additional *ex.* of فَعِلٌ — opinion of Jr—
government of first 3 paradigms allowable,

by common consent of BB—government of last two disputed—فَعِيلٌ and فَعِيلٌ when not transmuted from *act. part.*—فَعِيلٌ often intensive form of مَفْعَلٌ — فَعِيلٌ i. q. مَفَاعِلٌ not intensive—government of all 5 formations disallowed by KK—in truth, allowable—arguments of BB—opinion of IBdh—precedence of their *acc.*—their equality in *intensiveness*—distinctions in meaning drawn by H between *act. part.* and intensive paradigms—these paradigms not formed from *non-tril.*—some formed from أَفْعَلٌ ... 1606—1623

§ 344. Government of *act. part.* and intensive paradigm when not *sing.*—(1) of *du.* and sound *pl.*—*exs.*—(2) of broken *pl.*—*exs.*—such government frequent in فَوَاعِلٌ—*exs.*—elision of و of *du.* and sound *pl.* from (1) synarthrous *act. part.* governing (a) the *acc.*—(b) the *gen.*—(2) anarthrous *act. part.* governing the *acc.* ... 1623—1626

§ 345. Conditions requisite for government of *acc.* by *act.* or *pass. part.*—disputes as to government of *acc.* by *dim.* or qualified *act.* or *pass. part.*—government of *acc.* by

act. part. (1) conjoined with جـ — *ex.* — where *obj.* is an *adv.* — controversy on government of *acc.* by *act. part.* conjoined with جـ — (2) denuded of جـ — condition of *time* required for government of *acc.* — reason for prescribing this condition — prefixion necessary when *act. part.* denotes *past* — government of second *obj.* — *acc.* allowed by some in sole or first *obj.* — controversy on its allowability — case of other *objs.* — government of *nom.* by *act.* or *pass. part.* — no condition of *time* needed for such government — dispute as to *nom.* so governed — controversy as to whether condition of *support* is needed for such government ... 1626—1637

§ 346. Condition of *support* required for government of *acc.* by *act. part.* denuded of جـ — *voc. p.* not a support — reason for prescribing this condition — support upon suppressed qualified — IM's theory of such support when *act. part.* is *enunc.* or *d. s.* — support upon supplied *interrog.* — supplied supports referred to by IHsh — unsupported *act. part.* *inop.* — its government allowed by KK and Akh — their opinion refuted ... 1637—1642

§ 346A. Prefixion of <i>act. part.</i> —to its <i>obj.</i> or <i>pred.</i> — <i>acc.</i> or <i>gen.</i> allowable in <i>obj.</i> immediately following <i>op. act. part.</i> — <i>exs.</i> — <i>acc.</i> necessary in other <i>objs.</i> — <i>gen.</i> allowable in one contingency— <i>gen.</i> necessary in <i>obj.</i> immediately following <i>inop. act. part.</i> — <i>acc.</i> necessary in other <i>objs.</i> —opinion of Sf as to what governs them in <i>acc.</i> —choice of case (<i>acc.</i> or <i>gen.</i>) allowed only in explicit <i>n.</i> —case of <i>pron.</i> attached to <i>acc. part.</i> —opinion of S—of Akh and Hsh—comparative merits of <i>acc.</i> and <i>gen.</i> , when choice allowed—separation of <i>pre. act. part.</i> from its <i>post. obj.</i> —case of <i>appos.</i> of <i>obj.</i> governed in <i>gen.</i> by <i>act. part.</i> — <i>ex.</i> — <i>acc.</i> allowable even when <i>qual.</i> is <i>inop.</i> —comparative merits of <i>acc.</i> and <i>gen.</i> in <i>appos.</i> when <i>act. part.</i> is in sense of <i>past</i> —and when <i>act. part.</i> is in sense of <i>present</i> or <i>future.</i> — <i>ex.</i> of <i>acc.</i> —dispute as to whether <i>op.</i> of <i>acc.</i> should be supplied—and, if so, then what sort of <i>op.</i> — <i>qual.</i> preferable to <i>v.</i> — <i>acc.</i> really a syllepsis— <i>gen.</i> preferable— <i>v.</i> must be supplied for <i>acc.</i> when <i>act. part.</i> is <i>inop.</i> — <i>acc.</i> better in <i>ant.</i> after <i>op. act. part.</i> —dispute as to allowability of <i>gen.</i> in <i>appos.</i> of <i>acc.</i>	...	...	... 1642—1649
--	-----	-----	---------------

- § 346B. Tho *prep.* *ل* used as support to government of *self-trans. act. part.* or *inf. n.*—allowable after *act. part.*, not after *v.*—opinion of Mb on allowability after *v.*—the *prep.* *ب* sometimes used as support ... 1649—1650

THE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

- § 347. *Pass. part.* defined—illustration—another definition—formation of *pass. part.* of (1) plastic, *att.*, unaugmented *tril.*—when *ع* or *ل* unsound—no *act.* or *pass. part.* of aplastic *v.*—*pass. part.* of *tril.* not on measure of its *aor.*—but still quasi-conformable to its *v.* — *فَعِيلٌ* as a substitute for *مَفْعُولٌ*—its regularity disputed—*قَدِيرٌ* i. q. *مَقْدُورٌ* — government of this *فَعِيلٌ* denied by IM—(2) *v.* other than unaugmented *tril.*—whether such *v.* be *trans.* or *intrans.* — *مَضْعُوفٌ* *pass. part.* of *أَضَعَفَ* — *فَعِيلٌ* as a substitute for *مُفَعَّلٌ* — *pass. part.* of *intrans. v.*—formation of *pass. part.* from *trans.* and *intrans.* — *pass. part.* why named *اِسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ* — *pass. part.* applicable to *adv.*, not to *inf. n.*—government of *pass. part.*—condi-

tions of its government — condition of
time prescribed only by moderns—pre-
 fixation of *pass. part.* to its *nom.*—by
 coordination with assimilate *ep.*—such
 prefixion not allowable in *act. part.*—IM's
 language here—and in Tashīl—prefixion of
pass. part. when improper—and when
 proper—*pass. part.* on measure of فَعِيلٌ ,
 or the like, not coordinated with assimilate
ep.—مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ مَكْحُولٍ عَيْنِهِ or مَقْتُولٍ
 أَبِيهِ 1651—1661

THE ASSIMILATE EPITHET.

- § 348. Assimilate *ep.* defined by IH—by IHsh—
 حَسَنٌ وَجْهَهُ or حَسَنٌ وَجْهَهُ — by IM—
 no other *ep. pre.* to its *nom.*—except in-
 trans. *act. part.*, when *continuance* is in-
 tended by it—and *pass. part.* when *conti-*
nuance is intended — definition of IM
 criticised by BD—definition suggested by
 BD—sense of *continuing* in assimilate *ep.*
 —opinion of R—shape of assimilate *ep.*—
 its regularity—its measures—this *ep.* fre-
 quent in *conjug.* of أَشْيَبُ—فَعَلٌ and أَمِيلٌ
 —assimilate *ep.* on measure of فَعْلَانٌ—from

conjug. other than *فَعَلَ* — assimilate *ep.*
 not conformable to its *v.*—its resemblance
 to *act. part.*— *أَبْيَضُ* and *غَضَبَانُ* — mat-
 ters wherein it participates with *act. part.*
 —its government—condition of *support*—
 reason of its government—nature of its
 government—*nom.* and *acc.* governed by
 it—such *acc.* assimilated to direct *obj.*—
cop. required in *reg.* of assimilate *ep.*—
حَسَنُ حَسَنِ الْوَجْهِ or *زَيْدٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ*
الْوَجْهِ—supplied or constructive *cop.* ... 1662—1675

§ 349. Matters wherein assimilate *ep.* differs from
act. part. ... 1675—1682

§ 350. *Reg.* of assimilate *ep.* sometimes an attached
pron., prominent—or latent—classifica-
 tion of connected *reg.* really or virtually
 governed in *acc.*—cases of *reg.*—72 con-
 structions possible—9 disallowed — 63
 allowable—8 being bad—15 weak—and
 40 good—synoptic table of the 72 con-
 structions—constructions of *reg.* when a
pron. — prothesis when disallowed — 3
 constructions added to 72, making 75—
 total number really 14,256—substantive
 sometimes treated as assimilate *ep.* ... 1683—1696

THE أَفْعَلُ OF SUPERIORITY.

- § 351. This أَفْعَلُ defined—should rather be called أَفْعَلُ of *excess*—its declension—its shape—formed from *intrans.* and *trans.*—only from such *vs.* as *vs.* of wonder are formed from—expressions of superiority how formed from such *vs.* as have no homomorphous *v.* of wonder ... 1697—1698
- § 352. Irregular formations—from *v.* exceeding 3 letters—from *pret. v.* upon measure of أَفْعَلُ—from *vs.* indicative of *colors*—or *internal defects* ... 1698—1702
- § 353. From substantive or *ep.* having no *v.* ... 1702—1703
- §. 354. This أَفْعَلُ regularly denotes *superiority of ag.*—occasionally of *obj.*—its formation from *pass. v.* ... 1703—1704
- § 355. Its states—its construction, (1) when anarthrous and aprothetic—dispute as to sense of مِنْ conjoined with it—precedence of مِنْ before it—separation of مِنْ from it—combination of this مِنْ with the مِنْ by whose means the *v.* that أَفْعَلُ is formed from is made *trans.*—participation of *gen.* governed by comparativial مِنْ in *accident*

denoted by root of *v.*—ironical comparative— *مِنْ* sometimes not comparativ
 — (2) when synarthrous or *pre.*— *أَفْعُلْ*[°]
 when *indet.*, and when *det.*— *أَفْعُلْ*[°] of superiority always used with *مِنْ*, the *art.*, or prothesis—not being deprived of all three—sense of *art.* with it—nor having two of the three combined ... 1704—1713

§ 356. Its number and gender ... 1713—1717

§ 357. Suppression of *مِنْ* with its *gen.*—comparative frequency of such suppression in various constructions— *أَفْعُلْ*[°] sometimes divested of sense of superiority—dispute as to regularity of this usage—number and gender of *أَفْعُلْ*[°] when so used— *أَوَّلِي* — *أَوَّلْ* — *أَوَّلْ* like *أَسْبَقُ*—its declension— *أَوَّلْ* — construction of *أَوَّلْ*—its qualificativity obscure—and generally disregarded—Tanwin and sign of *gen.* when introduced into it— *أَوَّلْ* when *uninfl.* upon Damm— *أَوَّلْ* — *مُذْعَمٌ أَوَّلْ* —or *أَوَّلْ* —the latter construction explained by S—and by R— *أَوَّلْ* *أَوَّلْ* *مِنْ* *أَوَّلْ* *مِنْ* *أَمْسٍ* and *مِنْ* *أَمْسٍ* ... 1717—1727

- § 358. **مِنْ — آخِرُ** suppressed from it—sense of superiority obliterated—gender and number—treated as a substantive—what sort of words qualified by it ... 1727—1729
- § 359. **الْجَلَّى** and **الدُّنْيَا**—sometimes anarthrous and aprothetic—**الدُّنْيَا** *orig. an ep.*—**دُنْيَا**—**الْجَلَّى** *an inf. n.*—**حُسْنَى** and **سُوْءَى**—explanations of **فَوَائِدُهَا مِنْ** **وَكُبْرَى مِنْ** and of **بِالْأَكْثَرِ مِنْهُمْ** ... 1729—1732
- § 360. **أَفْعَلُ** not like *v.* in government—expressed *nom.* not governed by it—except in rare *dial.*—unless **أَفْعَلُ** be replaceable by *v.* in same sense—case of **الْكُفْلُ**—reason for its government in this case—additional *exs.*—such *nom.* sometimes a *pro-ag.*—modifications of construction—*ex.* from tradition—this construction not found in *Kur*—heard only after negation—dispute as to allowability after prohibition or interrogation—latent *nom.* governed by **أَفْعَلُ**—in every *dial.*, and without restriction—direct *obj.* in *acc.* not governed by **أَفْعَلُ**—nor *acc.* assimilated to direct *obj.*—**أَفْعَلُ**

made *trans.* by *prep.* — *v.* of wonder
 similarly treated — construction of أَفْعَلُ^ف
 formed from doubly *trans. v.* — أَفْعَلُ^ف not
 made *trans.* to 2nd *obj.* by *prep.* —
 unrestricted, causative, and concomitate
objs. not governed in *acc.* by أَفْعَلُ^ف —
adv., *ds.*, and *sp.* governed in *acc.* by it ... 1732—1743

THE NOUNS OF TIME AND PLACE.

- § 361. Their application—want of government—
 object of using them—their formations—
 vowel of their ع—their measures—why not
 pronounced with Damm of ع —irregular
 formation of (1) مَفْعَلٌ from يَفْعُلُ, (a) in
 place of مَفْعَلٌ — مَظِنَّةٌ — (b) in addition to
 مَفْعَلٌ — مَنَخَرٌ — مَكْشَرٌ and مَكَلٌ — مَفْعَلٌ
 (2) مَفْعَلٌ from يَفْعُلُ, in addition to مَفْعَلٌ 1741—1747
- § 362. The ة sometimes affixed to these *ns.* — مَفْعَلَةٌ
 —such affixion not regular ... 1747—1749
- § 363. The foregoing all applicable to unaugmented
tril.—formation of these *ns.* from aug-
 mented *tril.*, and from *quad.*—reason of
 their conformability to *pass. part.* ... 1749—1750

- § 364. **مَفْعَلَةٌ** formed from *prim.* substantive, to indicate *abundance*—**مَرْوَحَةٌ**—this formation peculiar to *tril.*—**مَكْوَاةٌ** or **مَكْيَاةٌ**—**مَقْنَأَةٌ**—this **مَفْعَلَةٌ** coordinated with *ns.* of place—but not regular—**مَفْعَلَةٌ** — **أَفْعَلٌ**, *act. part.* **مَفْعَلٌ**—**مَفْعَلَةٌ** not formed from substantive of more than 3 *rads.*—**مُتَعَلِّبَةٌ** and **مُتَعَلِّبٌ**—**مُعَقِّرَةٌ** and **مُعَقِّرٌ**, and the like—**مُتَعَلِّبَةٌ** and **مُعَقِّرَةٌ** not actually heard — **مُتَعَلِّبٌ** — **مُعَقِّرٌ** — **مَفْعَلَةٌ** used to denote *cause of abundance* ... 1750—1754
- § 365. No government exercised by *n.* of time or place—apparent instance of such government ... 1754—1755

THE INSTRUMENTAL NOUN.

- § 366. Definition—loose application of term—**مُحَلِّبٌ**—formation of instrumental *n.*—its measures—**مَفْعَلَةٌ** — **مَفْعَلٌ** said to be contracted from **مِفْعَالٌ**—vowel of **م**—**مَرْوَحَةٌ** and **مَرْوَحَةٌ** ... 1756—1757

- § 367. Anomalous formations—مُفْعَلٌ and مُفْعِلَةٌ—
 explanation of these measures—distinction
 in meaning between them and measures
 pronounced with Kasr of م ... 1758—1759

CHAPTER XV.

THE TRILITERAL NOUN.

- § 368. The *n.* unaugmented and augmented—*rad.*
 formations of *decl. n.*—controversy as
 to *quad.* and *quin.*—number of *aug.*
 letters allowable in each formation—
 greatest number of letters in unaug-
 mented and augmented *ns.* respectively
 —certain *augs.* not taken into account
 —formations of unaugmented *tril.*—12
 formations theoretically possible — but
 one formation neglected, and one rare
 — فَعِلٌ neglected — حَبَكٌ — فَعِلٌ rare—
 instances of it—فَعِلٌ not neglected — some
 measures reduced to others—meaning of
 this statement—such variations peculiar
 to *dial.* of Tamīm—formations of aug-
 mented *tril.* ... 1760—1770
369. Meaning of “augmented”—object of aug-
 mentation—classification of augment ... 1770—1771

§ 389.	Three augments united after the ج	...	1792—1793
§ 390.	Three augments dispersed, two being united, and one separate	...	1793—1795
§ 391.	Four augments	...	1795

CHAPTER XVI.

THE QUADRILITERAL NOUN.

§ 392.	Formations of unaugmented <i>quad.</i> —فَعْلَلٌ disputed—no فَعْلَلٌ or فُعْلِلٌ—48 forma- tions possible by analogy, but none found other than those mentioned above—3 added by some qq—second or third letter of <i>quad.</i> quiescent—apparent instances to contrary—such formations not original— formations of augmented <i>quad.</i>	...	1796—1800
§ 393.	Classification of augment—number of its letters—greatest number of letters in aug- mented <i>quad.</i> —single augment before the ف		1800
§ 394.	Single augment after the ف	...	1801
§ 395.	Single augment after the ع	...	1801—1802
§ 396.	Single augment after the first ج	...	1802—1803
§ 397.	Single augment after the last ج	...	1803—1804

	Page.
§ 398. Two augments separated	1804—1805
§ 399. Two augments united	1805—1806
§ 400. Three augments	1807

CHAPTER XVII.

THE QUINQUELITERAL NOUN.

§ 401. Formations of unaugmented <i>quin.</i> —formation added by IS—measures added by others—192 formations possible, but rest not found—aggregate of measures agreed upon in unaugmented <i>n.</i> —variations explained— رَخْسٌ and بَلَخْسٌ —variations how explained in Tashil—no <i>sex. rad.</i> formation—augment in <i>quin.</i> only a single letter—its nature and position—formations of augmented <i>quin.</i>	1808—1813
--	-----------

CONTENTS.

PART II.—The Verb.

CHAPTER I.—THE VERB IN GENERAL.	PAGE.
§ 402. Definition—signs—divisions—inflection ...	1-3
CHAPTER II.—THE PRETERITE.	
§ 403. Definition—signs—عَسَى, لَيْسَ, and نَعِم—pronunciation of the final—طَلَّتْ, خَفَّتْ, and قَلَّتْ—هَبَّتْ and عَلَّتْ—أَشْتَرُوا—بَعَتْ and رَمَى—دَعَا and عَفَا.	4-7
CHAPTER III.—THE AORIST.	
§ 401. Its time—resembles the <i>n.</i> —is <i>infl.</i> —when used as a present, future, past, or historic present—sign—formation—initial letter—vowel of initial in the <i>act.</i> voice—vowel of penultimate in the <i>act.</i> voice of <i>vs.</i> exceeding three letters in the <i>pret.</i> —moods—يَغْزُو, يَخْشَى, and يَرْمِي.	8-14
§ 405. The five paradigms—اتَّحَاجِرُنِي — يَعْفُونَ on the measure of يَفْعَلُونَ or يَفْعَلُونَ.	15-16a.
§ 406. The <i>aor.</i> that the ن of the <i>fem. pl.</i> or of corroboration is contiguous to—لَتَسْمَعَنَّ and لَتَقْبَلَنَّ.	16a.-16b.
§ 407. Distinction between the moods and cases—and between the requirer of inflection and the <i>op.</i> of the mood.	16b.
THE INDICATIVE.	
§ 408. The <i>aor.</i> governed in the <i>ind.</i> —its <i>op.</i> —تَفْدٍ for لَتَفْدٍ—أَشْرَبَ for أَشْرَبَ.	17-18
§ 409. O. f. of the <i>pred.</i> of كَدَّ, جَعَلَ, and طَفِقَ ...	18-19

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.		PAGE.
§ 410.	The <i>aor.</i> governed in the <i>subj.</i> —its <i>ops.</i> اِنَّ, اِنْ, اَنْ, and اَن.	20-22
§ 411.	Government of the <i>subj.</i> by اَنْ understood after حَتَّى, the ل, اَوْ, اَنْ, اِنْ, اَنْ, and اَنْ.	22-34
§ 412.	The senses of مَا تَأْتِيْنَا فَتَحْدِثُنَا ...	34
§ 413.	Expressibility of اَنْ after these <i>ps.</i> ...	34-35
§ 414.	Varieties of mood after these <i>ps.</i> —after حَتَّى ...	35-39
§ 415.	After اَوْ ...	39-40
§ 416.	After tho , ...	40-43
§ 417.	After the ف when not preceded by negation or requisition—when preceded by مَا prefixed to a verbal <i>prop.</i> , اَنْ prefixed to a nominal <i>prop.</i> , اَنْ, اَنْ, اَنْ, اَنْ, the <i>imp.</i> ل, the causative ل.	43-51
§ 418.	After اَنْ, the ف, or the , when preceded by a <i>v.</i> in the <i>subj.</i>	51
§ 418.A.	Government of the <i>subj.</i> by اَنْ allowably suppressed after the , the ف, اَنْ, and اَنْ coupling to a pure <i>n.</i> —by اَنْ anomalously suppressed—the <i>ind.</i> after suppression of اَنْ.	52-54b.
THE APOCOPATE.		
§ 419.	The <i>aor.</i> governed in the <i>apoc.</i> —its <i>ops.</i> —they are <i>ps.</i> or <i>vs.</i> —the condition or <i>prot.</i> —must be a verbal <i>prop.</i> —the <i>correl.</i> or <i>apod.</i> —is a verbal or nominal <i>prop.</i> —tenses of the <i>vs.</i> —mood of the <i>aor.</i> in the <i>apod.</i> —predicaments inadmissible in the <i>v.</i> of the condition—the <i>correl.</i> when conjoined with the ف or اِنْ—suppression of the ف—inflectional place of the <i>prop.</i> occurring	55-70

	PAGE.
after the ف or لِ as <i>correl.</i> of an apocopative condition—suppression of the <i>apod.</i> , and of the <i>v.</i> of the condition—suppression of the <i>correl.</i> disallowed, allowable, or necessary.	
§ 420. Suppression of the instrument and <i>v.</i> of the condition— <i>apoc.</i> in <i>correl.</i> of requisition when the ف is dropped and <i>apod.</i> intended—condition necessary for such suppression— <i>op.</i> of the <i>correl.</i> —suppression of the <i>cond. prop.</i> regular or frequent.	70-72
§ 421. <i>Apoc.</i> in <i>correl.</i> of command or prohibition indicated by verbal <i>n.</i> or enuuciatory form.	72-73
§ 422. Condition of the <i>apoc.</i> in the <i>correl.</i> of prohibition ...	73-74
§ 423. Construction of the <i>ind.</i> when <i>apod.</i> is not intended ...	74-75
§ 424. Mood of the <i>aor.</i> interposed without a <i>con.</i> between the <i>prot.</i> and <i>apod.</i>	75-76
§ 425. Mood of the <i>aor.</i> after the ف , the و , or م , preceded by the condition and <i>apod.</i> —or between the condition and <i>apod.</i>	76-79
§ 426. <i>Apoc.</i> in <i>aor.</i> coupled after an unapocopated <i>correl.</i> of requisition—what it is coupled to.	79-82
§ 427. Suppression of one <i>correl.</i> when a condition is combined with an oath—or with another condition.	82-87
CHAPTER IV.—THE IMPERATIVE.	
§ 428. Formation—time—termination—vowel of <i>conj.</i> Hamza— <i>imp.</i> of أَمَرَ , أَخَذَ , and أَكَلَ —sign— هَاتِ and تَعَالِ —distinction between the <i>imp. v.</i> and <i>imp. verbal n.</i>	88-94
§ 429. <i>Imp. pass.</i> —or <i>act.</i> , but not 2nd pers. ...	94
§ 430. Rare form of <i>imp.</i> 2nd pers. <i>act.</i> ...	94-95
§ 431. Uninflectedness of the <i>imp.</i> ...	95
CHAPTER V.—THE TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE.	
§ 432. The <i>v.</i> is <i>trans.</i> or <i>intrans.</i> —definitions—government common to all <i>vs.</i> —sign of the <i>trans.</i> and <i>intrans.</i> —the <i>trans. v.</i> governs its direct <i>obj.</i> in the <i>acc.</i> —sometimes	96-107

	in the <i>nom.</i> —classification of <i>intrans.</i> and <i>trans. vs.</i> —	PAGE.
	relative precedence of the two <i>objs.</i> of <i>vs.</i> like ^{أَعْطَى} and ^{كَسَا} .	
§ 433.	Causes occasioning transitiveness	107-113
§ 434.	The trebly <i>trans. v.</i>	113-118
§ 435.	<i>Accs.</i> governed by both <i>trans.</i> and <i>intrans. vs.</i> ...	118-119
CHAPTER VI.—THE PASSIVE.		
§ 436.	Definition— <i>pro-ag.</i> —how to parse ^{ضَرَبَ} ^{زَيْدٌ} —formation of the <i>pass.</i> —vowel of the initial and penultimate—pre- dicaments of the <i>pro-ag.</i> —vowel of the ^{نِ} in the <i>pret.</i> of the <i>tril. v.</i> unsound in the ^ع , and of the redupli- cated <i>v.</i> —vowel of the 2nd letter of the <i>pret.</i> when the initial is an <i>aug.</i> ^ت —of the 3rd when the initial is a <i>conj.</i> Hamza—of the antepenultimate of ^{أَفْعَلٌ} and ^{أَفْعَلٌ} , unsound in the ^ع —of their Hamza—which <i>objs.</i> may be <i>pro-ag.</i>	120-125
§ 437.	Case of the remaining <i>objs.</i>	125-126
§ 438.	Which <i>obj.</i> may be <i>pro-ag.</i> when the direct <i>obj.</i> is pre- sent—and when it is absent—proviso as to the unres- tricted and adverbial <i>objs.</i> — <i>exs.</i> of these two <i>objs.</i> as <i>pro-ag.</i>	126-131
§ 439.	Which <i>obj.</i> may be <i>pro-ag.</i> in the <i>cats.</i> of ^{أَعْطَى} , ^{ظَنَّ} , and ^{أَعْلَمَ} .	131-132
CHAPTER VII.—THE MENTAL AND TRANSMUTATIVE OR FACTITIVE VERBS.		
§ 440.	^{ظَنَّ} , etc.—annul inchoation—are mental or transmuta- tive—the mental <i>vs.</i> —indicate <i>certainty</i> or <i>probability</i> — their government— <i>exs.</i> —are plastic and aplastic—the transmutative <i>vs.</i> —their government— <i>exs.</i>	133-146
§ 441.	^{أَرَيْتُ} i. q. ^{ظَنَنْتُ} — ^{تَقُولُ} i. q. ^{تُظَنُّ} — the <i>prop.</i> after ^{ظَنَّ} when treated like ^{ظَنَّ} .	146-149

	PAGE.
§ 442. The mental <i>vs.</i> when <i>trans.</i> to one <i>obj.</i> — اَتَمَّهٗمَ i. q. ظَنَّ — 149-152 حَجًّا — رَوَّيَا or رَوَّيَةً, رَأَى from رَأَى — عَرَفَ i. q. عَلِمَ i q. بَصَرَتَ i. q. اَرَبْتُ — اَصَابَ i. q. وَجَدَ — قَصَدَ i q. تَفَرَّهٗ i. q. تَقَوَّلَ — and عَرَفْتُ —	
§ 443. Peculiarities of the mental <i>vs.</i> —suppression of one or 152-155 both <i>objs.</i> — ظَنَنْتُ بِهِ — ظَنَنْتُ ذَاكَ.	
§ 444. Neutralization—Neutralization and suspension peculiar 155-157 to the plastic mental <i>vs.</i> —neutralization allowable, preferable, or disallowed—never necessary, unlike sus- pension.	
§ 445. Suspension—necessary before the 10 suspensories—in- 157-166 fleotional position of the <i>prop.</i> that the <i>op.</i> is suspended from— <i>n.</i> coupled to it in the <i>acc.</i> —reason of the term “suspension”—suspension occurs in none but mental <i>vs.</i> —but is not confined to mental <i>vs.</i> of the <i>cat.</i> of ظَنَّ—position of the <i>prop.</i> that the <i>v.</i> is suspended from governing.	
§ 446. Reflexive objective <i>pron.</i> —فَعَدَّنِي and عَدِمْتَنِي—reflexive 166 <i>obj.</i> in other <i>vs.</i>	

CHAPTER VIII.—THE NON-ATTRIBUTIVE VERBS.

§ 447. كُنَّ, etc—government—conditions of government—plas- 167-171 ticity and aplanicity—government of the <i>aor.</i> , <i>imp.</i> , <i>act. part.</i> , and <i>inf. n.</i> of the plastic—كُنَّ has an <i>inf. n.</i> — دَامَ, لَيْسَ, and زَالَ and its sisters, have no <i>imp.</i> or <i>inf.</i> <i>n.</i> —meaning of “ <i>att.</i> ” and “ <i>non-att.</i> ”—the <i>non-att. vs.</i> indicate <i>accident</i> —used attributively, except فِتْنَى, زَالَ, and لَيْسَ.	
§ 448. How mentioned by S— <i>vs.</i> coordinated with them ... 171	

	PAGE.
§ 449. The <i>sub.</i> how known from the <i>pred.</i> —the <i>pred.</i> a single term or <i>prop.</i> —the <i>prop.</i> necessarily enunciatory—the <i>red.</i> , when prefixed to the <i>prop.</i> —the <i>sub.</i> sometimes a <i>pron.</i> relating to the <i>pred.</i> —the <i>sub.</i> and <i>v.</i> made <i>fem.</i> because the <i>pred.</i> is <i>fem.</i> —difference of gender in the <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> —multiplicity of <i>preds.</i>	171-179
§ 450. Usages of كُنْ—ambiguous constructions—meanings of the <i>non-att.</i> كُنْ—elision of the ن of كُنْ in the <i>apoc.</i>	179-184
§ 451. Meaning and usages of مَرَّ	184
§ 452. Meanings and usages of أَصْبَحَ , أَمْسَى , and أَفْطَحَ ...	185-186
§ 453. Meanings of ظَلَّ and بَاتَ	186-187
§ 454. Meanings of مَا زَالَ , etc.—used only in denial—زَالَ , etc. why preceded by a <i>neg.</i> —not followed by a void <i>exc.</i> as their <i>pred.</i> —suppression of the <i>neg.</i> , regularly and anomalously.	187-190
§ 455. Meaning of دَامَ—meaning and usage of مَا دَامَ ...	190
§ 456. Meaning of لَيْسَ—how proved to be a <i>v.</i> —its <i>o. f.</i> —when made <i>inop.</i>	190-191
§ 457. Precedence of the <i>pred.</i> —the <i>pred.</i> may precede the <i>sub.</i> —such precedence necessary, disallowed, or allowable—its allowability in the <i>pred.</i> of لَيْسَ and دَامَ—the <i>pred.</i> of دَامَ may not precede the مَا , but may precede دَامَ—the <i>pred.</i> may not precede the <i>neg.</i> مَا , but may precede any other <i>neg.</i> , or the <i>v.</i> alone when the <i>neg.</i> is مَا—dispute as to whether the <i>pred.</i> of لَيْسَ may precede it—the <i>reg.</i> of the <i>pred.</i> may precede لَيْسَ—and other sisters of كُنْ .	191-194
§ 458. Precedence of the <i>reg.</i> of the <i>pred.</i> —when not an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> , it may not precede both <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> , but may precede the <i>sub.</i> alone—when an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> , it may precede both <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> —	195-197

distinction made by S—explanation of instances where the *reg.*, not being an *adv.* or *prep.* and *gen.*, precedes both *sub.* and *pred.*

PAGE.

CHAPTER IX.—THE VERBS OF APPROPINQUATION.

- § 459. ^كك, etc—are a division of the annulling *vs.*—^{عسى}عسى and 198-206
^{حرى}حرى are *vs.*—classification of these *vs.*—why named *vs.*
of *app.*—govern like ^كك—why classed separately—their
government—their *pred.*—its *nom.*—these *vs.* aplastic,
except ^كك and ^{اوشك}اوشك — ^{عسى}عسى, ^{اخْلَوْلَقْ}اخْلَوْلَقْ, and ^{اوشك}اوشك
used attributively—analysis of ^{عسى}عسى ^{ان}ان ^{يقوم}يقوم ^{زيد}زيد—the
pred. of ^{حرى}حرى and ^{اخْلَوْلَقْ}اخْلَوْلَقْ necessarily, and of ^{عسى}عسى
generally, conjoined with ^{ان}ان—usages of ^{عسى}عسى.
- § 460. The *pred.* of ^كك—generally denuded of ^{ان}ان—some- 206-207
times suppressed.
- § 461. ^{عسى}عسى why omitted after ^كك, and inserted after ^{عسى}عسى—the 207-208
converse construction.
- § 462. ^{عسى}عسى conjugated—vowel of the *س*—it may contain a 208-210
pron. relating to a preceding *inch.*, or be denuded of
the *pron.*—the other *vs.* of this *cat.* must contain the
pron.
- § 463. ^كك conjugated 210
- § 464. Distinction in the *app.* denoted by ^{عسى}عسى and ^كك— 210-211
meanings of ^{عسى}عسى.
- § 465. Theory that ^كك, when denied, affirms the *pred.*, and, 211-214
when affirmed, denies it—AlMa'arri's riddle upon
^كك—refutation of that theory.
- § 466. Meaning and usages of ^{اوشك}اوشك—its *pred.* generally con- 214-215
joined with ^{ان}ان.

	PAGE.
§ 467. كَرَبْ like كَرَبْ — its <i>pred.</i> generally denuded of أَنْ — the <i>pred.</i> of the <i>vs.</i> of commencement not conjoined with أَنْ — the least and most known of these <i>vs.</i> — <i>dial. vars.</i> of طَفِقَ — usages of جَعَلَ .	215-218
CHAPTER X.—THE VERBS OF PRAISE AND BLAME.	
§ 468. نَعِمَ and بُئِسَ — <i>vs.</i> , not <i>ns.</i> — <i>aplastic</i> — denote <i>general superlative praise and blame</i> — have 4 <i>dial. vars.</i> — سَاءَ — نَعَلْ made to imply the sense of <i>wonder</i> — peculiarities of its <i>ag.</i> — حَبَّ .	219-221
§ 469. The <i>ag.</i> of نَعِمَ , بُئِسَ , and سَاءَ either an explicit <i>n.</i> , synarthrous or <i>pre.</i> to the synarthrous, or a <i>pron.</i> followed by a <i>sp.</i> or by مَا — not an anarthrous explicit <i>n.</i> , nor particular — the particularized — its sign — seldom precedes نَعِمَ and بُئِسَ .	221-224
§ 470. Combination of the explicit <i>ag.</i> and the <i>sp.</i> — the <i>sp.</i> of the explicit <i>ag.</i> may follow, but that of the <i>pron.</i> must precede, the particularized.	224-225
§ 471. نَعِمَا and بُئِسَمَا — dispute about this مَا ...	225
§ 472. Construction of the particularized, <i>postpos.</i> or <i>prepos.</i> — the <i>cop.</i> when the particularized is an <i>inch.</i> whose <i>enunc.</i> is the <i>prepos.</i> or <i>postpos. prop.</i>	226
§ 473. The particularized is suppressed — but not the <i>sp.</i> ...	226-227
§ 474. The <i>v.</i> made <i>fem.</i> , and the <i>ag.</i> and particularized made <i>du.</i> or <i>pl.</i> , when the <i>ag.</i> is an explicit <i>n.</i> — the pronominal <i>ag.</i> always <i>sing.</i> , and, according to R, <i>masc.</i>	227-228
§ 475. The particularized must be homogeneous with the <i>ag.</i> — and particular.	228-229

	PAGE.
§ 476. ^{حَبَّ} and ^{لَا حَبَّ} —meaning and <i>o. f.</i> of ^{حَبَّ} —pronunciations of ^{حَبَّ} —and of every ^{فُعْلٌ} meaning <i>praise</i> or <i>wonder</i> —case of the <i>n.</i> other than ^{ذَا} after ^{حَبَّ} —analysis of ^{حَبَّ} ^{زَيْدٌ} — ^{حَبَّ} and ^{ذَا} may not be separated— ^{حَبَّ} is uniform in gender and number—the particularized may be preceded or followed by a <i>sp.</i> or <i>d.s.</i> —the <i>acc.</i> after ^{حَبَّ} —posteriority of the <i>sp.</i> to the particularized, and its omission, why not allowable with ^{نَعَمْ} , and allowable with ^{حَبَّ} .	229-238

CHAPTER XI.—THE TWO VERBS OF WONDER.

§ 477. ^{أَفْعَلٌ} and ^{أَفْعَلٌ} —how proved to be <i>vs.</i> —aplastic—formed from what <i>vs.</i> — ^{مَا أَسْوَدَ} , etc, in what sense right— ^{أَشَدَّ} , ^{أَشَدَّ} , etc, used as connectives—this usage when impossible—rare formations—suppression of the wondered at—the <i>ag.</i> why thus suppressible.	234-238
§ 478. Analysis of ^{أَفْعَلٌ} ^{زَيْدٌ} in ^{أَفْعَلٌ} ^{زَيْدٌ} —sense of ^{مَا أَكْرَمَ} —analysis of ^{أَفْعَلٌ} ^{بِهِ} .	238-241
§ 479. Opinions as to ^{مَا}	241-242
§ 480. The <i>v.</i> of wonder is not preceded by its <i>reg.</i> —nor separated from it by an extraneous word—but is separated from it, allowably or necessarily, by another <i>reg.</i> when the latter is an <i>adv.</i> or <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i>	242-243
§ 481. The <i>v.</i> of wonder in past time	244

CHAPTER XII.—THE TRILITERAL VERB.

§ 482. The <i>v.</i> is unaugmented or augmented—the unaugmented <i>v.</i> is <i>tril.</i> or <i>quad.</i> —formations of the unaugmented <i>tril.</i> in the <i>pref. act.</i> and <i>pass.</i> —occasional quiescence of the	245-257
--	---------

medial—vowel of the ع in the <i>aor. act.</i> —the augmented <i>tril.</i> is <i>quad.</i> , <i>quin.</i> , or <i>sex.</i> —the augment—formations of the augmented <i>tril.</i>	PAGE.
§ 483. The formations of the augmented <i>tril.</i> are commensurable and coordinate with the <i>quad.</i> —commensurable, but not coordinate with it—and incommensurable with it—اِسْتَكَّانَ.	257-258
§ 484. Meanings of فَعَلَ—the <i>conjug.</i> of <i>contending for superiority</i> —فَعَلَ here is only <i>trans.</i> —this <i>conjug.</i> is not regular—فَعَلَ is oftener <i>intrans.</i> —its usual meanings—it sometimes shares them with فَعَلَ—it is <i>intrans.</i> in all of them—apparent exceptions—meanings of فَعَلَ—it is <i>intrans.</i> —apparent exceptions.	258-261
§ 485. Meanings of تَفَعَّلَ	261
§ 486. Meanings of تَفَعَّلَ	261-264
§ 487. Meanings of تَفَاعَلَ—it may have a single <i>ag.</i> , and be <i>trans.</i>	264-265
§ 488. Meanings of اُنْعَلَ	265-269
§ 489. Meanings of فَعَلَ	269-271
§ 490. Meanings of فَاعَلَ	271-273
§ 491. Meanings of اِنْفَعَلَ	273-274
§ 492. Meanings of اِفْتَعَلَ	274-276
§ 493. Meanings of اِسْتَفْعَلَ	276-278
§ 493.A. Meanings of اِنْفَعَلَ and اُنْعَلَ	278

	PAGE.
§ 494. ^{أَفْعُولٌ} is intensive and <i>corrob.</i> , and is sometimes <i>trans.</i> — ^{أَفْعُولٌ} is a coined formation, <i>trans.</i> and <i>intrans.</i> — ^{أَفْعَلٌ} is coined—and so sometimes are ^{أَفْعُولٌ} , ^{أَفْعَلٌ} , and ^{أَفْعَالٌ} .	278-279
§ 494.A. All these <i>conjugs</i> are <i>trans.</i> and <i>intrans.</i> , except ^{أَفْعُولٌ} , ^{أَفْعَلٌ} , and ^{أَفْعَالٌ} —and sometimes denote meanings not reducible to rule.	279
CHAPTER XIII.—THE QUADRILITERAL VERB.	
§ 495. Formation of the unaugmented <i>quad.</i> in the <i>pret. act.</i> and <i>pass.</i> , and in the <i>imp.</i> —the augmented <i>quad.</i> is <i>quin.</i> or <i>sex.</i> —formations of the augmented <i>quad.</i> —they are <i>intrans.</i>	280
§ 495.A. ^{أَفْعُلٌ} is <i>quasi-pass.</i> of the <i>trans.</i> ^{أَفْعُلٌ} ...	281
§ 496. ^{أَفْعُلٌ} and ^{أَفْعُلٌ} are <i>intrans.</i> —and so are <i>vs.</i> coordinated with ^{أَفْعُلٌ} and ^{أَفْعُلٌ} .	281
§ 496.A. The meanings above mentioned are not peculiar to the <i>pret.</i>	282

Part III.—The Particle.

CHAPTER I.—THE PARTICLE IN GENERAL.

§ 497. Definition—must be accompanied by a <i>n.</i> or <i>v.</i> —needs a single term or <i>prop.</i> —sign—prefixed to <i>ns.</i> and <i>vs.</i> , or to <i>ns.</i> or <i>vs.</i> alone— <i>yninfl.</i> —classification—the conjunct <i>ps.</i> —they are replaceable by the <i>inf. n.</i> —exceptions this rule—must be followed by a <i>conj.</i> —the ن—the هو, etc—the و—the ا—the ي:	283-291
---	---------

CHAPTER II.—THE PREPOSITIONS.					PAGE.
§ 498.	Definition—the <i>acc.</i> coupled to their <i>gen.</i> —classification—are peculiar to <i>na.</i> , and govern the <i>gen.</i> —govern what sorts of <i>n.</i> —the <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> depend upon a <i>v.</i> , etc, expressed or supplied—their dependence upon the <i>non-att. v.</i> , <i>aplastic v.</i> , and <i>p.</i> —what <i>preps.</i> do not depend—the <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> after <i>dets.</i> and <i>indets.</i> —the <i>nom.</i> after the <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> —their <i>op.</i> when necessarily suppressed—the necessarily suppressed <i>op.</i> when a <i>v.</i> , and when a <i>qual.</i> —how to be supplied—where to be supplied—latitude allowed in the <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> — <i>preps.</i> sometimes act as substitutes for others.				292-305
§ 499.	مِنْ	...	...	...	305-315
§ 500.	إِلَى	...	...	...	315-317
§ 501.	عَنْ or حَتَّى	...	...	...	317-323
§ 502.	فِي	...	...	...	323-326
§ 503.	The ب	...	...	...	327-338
§ 504.	The ل	...	...	...	338-348
§ 505.	رَبِّ	...	...	...	348-356
§ 506.	The و and ت of the oath	...	...	...	356-357
§ 507.	عَلَى	...	...	...	357-363
§ 508.	عَنْ	...	...	...	364-368
§ 509.	The ك	...	...	...	368-374
§ 510.	مِنْذ and مِّنْذ	...	...	...	375-376
§ 511.	حَاشَا	...	...	...	376-378
§ 512.	خَلَا and عَدَا	...	...	...	378
§ 513.	بِئْسَ — مَتَى, لَعَلَّ, and كَى sometimes mentioned as a <i>prep.</i>				379-380

	PAGE.
§ 514. Suppression of the <i>prep.</i> —regular in the case of all <i>preps.</i> with ^{اَءَ} أَنْ and ^{اَءَ} أَنْ and their <i>conj.s.</i> —provided there be no ambiguity—place of ^{اَءَ} أَنْ and ^{اَءَ} أَنْ and their <i>conj.s.</i> upon suppression of the <i>prep.</i> —regular also in the case of the causative ل with the infinitival كُنْ and its <i>conj.</i> —confined to hearsay with other <i>gens.</i>	380-388
§ 515. Subaudition of the <i>prep.</i> —in the case of رُبُّ, regularly after the , the ف, and بَلْ, and anomalously without these <i>cons.</i> —what governs the <i>gen.</i> —in the case of other <i>preps.</i> , regularly and otherwise.	388-385

CHAPTER III.—THE PARTICLES ASSIMILATED TO THE VERB.

§ 516. Form a division of the <i>ps.</i> annulling inchoation—consist of 6 <i>ps.</i> , ^{اَءَ} أَنْ, etc—resemble the <i>att.</i> , plastic, <i>trans.</i> , <i>v.</i> —their government—their position—their <i>pred.</i> when not requisitive—their government how affected by the affixion of مَا—sense of ^{اَءَ} أَنْمَا.	388-389
§ 517. Meaning of ^{اَءَ} أَنْ and ^{اَءَ} أَنْ— ^{اَءَ} أَنْ sometimes followed by two <i>accs.</i> —or by an <i>inch.</i> in the <i>nom.</i> —does not alter the <i>prop.</i> — ^{اَءَ} أَنْ with its <i>prop.</i> virtually a single term—a <i>conjunct. p.</i> —how renderable—its position.	389-391
§ 518. In what cases ^{اَءَ} أَنْ is necessary—and in what ^{اَءَ} أَنْ ...	391-396
§ 519. In what cases either ^{اَءَ} أَنْ or ^{اَءَ} أَنْ is allowable ...	396-398
§ 520. ^{اَءَ} أَنْ or ^{اَءَ} أَنْ after حَتَّى, etc ...	398-401
§ 521. Prefixion of the ل of inception with ^{اَءَ} أَنْ—what it is prefixed to—its position— ^{اَءَ} أَنْلَ—prefixion of the ل with ^{اَءَ} أَنْلَ and ^{اَءَ} أَنْ.	401-406

	PAGE.
§ 522. Pronunciation of ^{اَن} after the mental <i>v.</i> , whether followed by the ^ل or not.	406
§ 523. Case of the coupled <i>n.</i> after the <i>sub.</i> of ^{اَن} , ^{اَن} , or ^{لَكِن} — explanation of the <i>nom.</i> when the <i>pred.</i> precedes it — allowability of the <i>nom.</i> after the <i>sub.</i> of ^{اَن} and ^{لَكِن} — case of the other <i>appos.</i> — the <i>nom.</i> not allowable when the <i>pred.</i> follows it literally and constructively — or rather when the <i>pred.</i> must belong to both <i>subs.</i> — explanation of the <i>nom.</i> when the <i>pred.</i> follows it.	407-415
§ 524. ^{اَن} as a <i>sub.</i> , <i>subst.</i> , and <i>corrob.</i> — ^{اَن} as a <i>pred.</i> ...	415-416
§ 525. Contraction of ^{اَن} , ^{اَن} , ^{لَكِن} and ^{كُن} — the contracted ^{اَن} prefixed to what <i>props.</i> — <i>inop.</i> or <i>op.</i> — prefixed to what sort of <i>v.</i> — when followed by the distinctive ^ل — subaudition of <i>pron.</i> of the case after it when <i>inop.</i> — the contracted ^{اَن} — preceded by what sort of <i>v.</i> — <i>inop.</i> or <i>op.</i> — its <i>sub.</i> — prefixed to what sort of <i>prop.</i> — when followed by a separative — its <i>pred.</i>	416-424
§ 526. Sense of the <i>v.</i> prefixed to ^{اَن} , the contracted ^{اَن} , and the subjunctival ^{اَن} — mood of the <i>v.</i> following the contracted or subjunctival ^{اَن}	424-425
§ 527. ^{اَن} <i>syn.</i> with ^{اَجَلَ} or ^{نَعَمْ} — ^{اَن} <i>syn.</i> with ^{لَعَلَّ} — ^{عَنْ} ...	425
§ 528. ^{لَكِن} simple or <i>comp.</i> — its meaning — interposed between two sentences differing in negation and affirmation.	425-426
§ 529. The difference <i>lit.</i> or <i>id.</i> — the two sentences not necessarily contradictory, but merely repugnant — suppression of the <i>sub.</i> — the ^ل not prefixed to the <i>pred.</i>	426-428
§ 530. The contracted ^{لَكِن} <i>inop.</i> or <i>op.</i> — the ^ل allowable with ^{لَكِن} and ^{لَكِن} — elision of the ^ن of ^{لَكِن} — its occurrence as a <i>con.</i>	428

	PAGE.
§ 531. ^{١٤٤} كان said to be compounded of the ك and ^{١٤٤} ان—place of the ك—and of ^{١٤٤} ان with its <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> —the ك a <i>p.</i> or <i>n.</i> — ^{١٤٤} كان better held to be simple—reasons for the Fath of its Hamza—its meanings—sometimes followed by both terms in the <i>acc.</i>	429-432
§ 532. The contracted ^{١٤٤} كان <i>inop.</i> or <i>op.</i> —subaudition of <i>pron.</i> of the case after it when literally <i>inop.</i> —the <i>inop.</i> ^{١٤٤} كان prefixed to what <i>props.</i> — ^{١٤٤} كان really <i>op.</i> —its <i>sub.</i> and <i>pred.</i> —case of the <i>n.</i> after it—when followed by a separative.	432-436
§ 533. Meaning of ^{١٤٤} ليت—sometimes followed by both terms in the <i>acc.</i> —as also the other five <i>ps.</i> —suppression of its <i>sub.</i>	436-438
§ 534. ^{١٤٤} ليت prefixed to ^{١٤٤} ان	438-439
§ 535. Meanings of ^{١٤٤} لعل—sometimes followed by both terms in the <i>acc.</i>	439-440
§ 536. ^{١٤٤} لعل prefixed to ^{١٤٤} ان—its <i>pred.</i> conjoined with ^{١٤٤} ان or the <i>p.</i> of amplification—its <i>pred.</i> sometimes a <i>pret. v.</i>	440-441
§ 537. <i>Dial. vars.</i> of ^{١٤٤} لعل—the <i>o. f.</i> — <i>pred.</i> of ^{١٤٤} عل conjoined with ^{١٤٤} ان—sense and government of ^{١٤٤} لعل and ^{١٤٤} عل—mood of their <i>correl.</i> —suppression of the <i>sub.</i>	441-443
CHAPTER IV.—THE CONJUNCTIONS.	
§ 538. Coupling of single term to single term, and <i>prop.</i> to <i>prop.</i> —to two <i>regs.</i> of two <i>ops.</i> —to two or more <i>regs.</i> of one <i>op.</i> —to the <i>regs.</i> of more than two <i>ops.</i> —of <i>ns.</i> and <i>vs.</i> —of <i>pret.</i> to <i>aor.</i> , and the converse—of <i>aor.</i> in the future to <i>aor.</i> in the past, and the converse—of enunciatory to originative <i>prop.</i> , and the converse—of nominal to verbal <i>prop.</i> , and the converse—of single term to <i>prop.</i> , and the converse—of <i>v.</i> to <i>n.</i> ; and the	444-463

	converse—to the letter, place, and imagination or sense—the coupled in the predicament of the <i>ant.</i> —difference in inflection—predicaments unpardonable in the <i>ant.</i> pardonable in the coupled—the <i>ant.</i> preceded by the coupled—concord of the <i>pron.</i> relating to the <i>ant.</i> and coupled—suppression of the <i>ant.</i> , <i>con.</i> , or coupled and <i>con.</i> —number and classification of the <i>cons.</i> —meaning common to the , the ف, ثُمَّ, and حَتَّى .	PAGE.
§ 539.	The ,	463-477
§ 540.	Meaning common to the ف, ثُمَّ, and حَتَّى—distinction between them—and between the ف and ثُمَّ—the ف—ثُمَّ or فَم—the ف and ثُمَّ both denote <i>gradation in climax</i> —mood of the <i>aor.</i> conjoined with ثُمَّ between or after the condition and <i>apod.</i> , and after requisition—redundance of the , the ف, and حَتَّى—distinction between it and ثُمَّ—and between it and the ,—rare as a <i>con.</i>	477-495
§ 541.	Meaning common to إِمَّا ^{١٤} and أَمْ ^{١٤} —distinction between them.	495
§ 542.	Distinction between أَوْ ^{١٤} and أَمْ ^{١٤} —reply to the <i>conj.</i> أَمْ ^{١٤} , the <i>disj.</i> أَوْ ^{١٤} , and أَوْ ^{١٤}	495-497
§ 543.	Meanings common to أَوْ ^{١٤} and إِمَّا ^{١٤} —أَوْ ^{١٤} —إِمَّا ^{١٤} —أَمْ ^{١٤} ...	497-513
§ 544.	Distinction between أَوْ ^{١٤} and إِمَّا ^{١٤} —إِمَّا ^{١٤} not a <i>con.</i> —the إِمَّا ^{١٤} compounded of أَوْ ^{١٤} and مَا ^{١٤} .	513-514
§ 545.	Meaning common to لَا, لَيْسَ, and لَيْكِنْ ...	514-519
CHAPTER V.—THE NEGATIVE PARTICLES.		
§ 546.	مَا, etc—مَا	520-522
§ 547.	لَا	522-532

	PAGE.
§ 548. ^{لَمَّا} — ^{لَمَّا} — the <i>comp.</i> ^{لَمَّا} 533-537	
§ 549. ^{لَنْ} 537-539	
§ 550. ^{أَنْ} 539-541	

CHAPTER VI.—THE PREMONITORY PARTICLES.

§ 551. ^{هَآ} , etc.—why named “premonitory”— ^{يَا} —their position— ^{أَلَا} and ^{أَمَّا} — ^{إِلَّا} — ^{إِمَّا} — ^{إِمَّا} i. q. ^{حَقًّا} or ^{أَحَقًّا} .	542-546
§ 552. ^{هَآ} 546-548	
§ 553. <i>Dial. vars.</i> of ^{أَمَّا} 549	

CHAPTER VII.—THE VOCATIVE PARTICLES.

§ 554. ^{يَا} , etc.— ^{وَا} why included—kinds of <i>voc.</i> — ^{يَا} — ^آ — ^{يَا} — ^{هَآ} or ^{أَيَا} — ^{أَي} or ^{أَي} — the Hamza.	550-552
§ 555. ^{يَا} the most general of them 552	

CHAPTER VIII.—THE PARTICLES OF ASSENT AND AFFIRMATION.

§ 556. ^{بَلَى} , ^{نَعَمْ} , etc — ^{نَعَمْ} — ^{بَلَى} — distinction between ^{نَعَمْ} , ^{بَلَى} , and ^{لَا} — what <i>interrogs.</i> are replied to with the <i>ps.</i> of affirmation—replies to the <i>interrog. ns.</i> —to the Hamza with ^{أَم} — to the Hamza alone or with ^{أَم} , or to ^{هَلْ} — ^{أَي} — ^{أَنْ} — ^{جَبَر} — ^{جَلَل} — ^{بَجَل} — ^{أَجَل} .	553-562
§ 557. <i>Dial. vars.</i> of ^{نَعَمْ} 562-563	
§ 558. Pronunciation of the ^{أَي} in ^{أَي} ^{اللَّهُ} 563	

CHAPTER IX.—THE EXCEPTIVE PARTICLES.

§ 559. ^{أَلَا} , etc — ^{لَمَّا} — position of the <i>reg.</i> of an <i>op</i> conjoined with an exceptive <i>p.</i>	564
---	-----

CHAPTER X.—THE PARTICLES OF ALLOCUTION.					PAGE.
§ 560.	The ک and ت — the ك — the ت ...	...	...	...	565-566
§ 561.	The signs of gender and number are affixed to them ...	...	...	...	566
§ 562.	The ة and ي in اِيَا and اِيَا ...	...	...	...	566
CHAPTER XI.—THE CONNECTIVE OR REDUNDANT PARTICLES.					
§ 563.	ان etc.—named <i>red.</i> , connective, or <i>corrob.</i> — <i>op.</i> or <i>inop.</i> —	...	...	...	567-568
§ 564.	ان ...	...	...	...	568-570
§ 565.	مَا ...	...	...	...	570-574
§ 566.	لَا ...	...	...	...	574-577
§ 567.	مِنْ ...	...	...	...	577
§ 568.	The ب, the ل, and the ك ...	...	...	...	577
CHAPTER XII.—THE EXPOSITORY PARTICLES.					
§ 569.	ان and اِيَا — difference between them—single term after اِيَا — <i>prop.</i> imitative of a quasi-saying accompanied by the <i>expos. p.</i> —or unaccompanied by it.	...	...	...	578-580
§ 570.	ان — mood of the <i>aor.</i> accompanied by لَا after ان ...	...	...	...	580-581
CHAPTER XIII.—THE INFINITIVAL PARTICLES.					
§ 571.	مَا, etc.—مَا — its <i>conj.</i> —مَا not temporal or temporal—ان not temporal—مَا conjoined with a plastic <i>p.</i> —suppression of مَا — ان — its <i>conj.</i> —other meanings of ان — اَلَّذِي and the infinitival ان interchangeable—ان — the contracted ان — كِي — لُو — authenticity	...	...	...	582-592

	PAGE
of the infinitival ^{لُو} —its <i>conj.</i> —mood of the <i>v.</i> con- joined with the ^ن after it.	
§ 572. <i>Apoc.</i> governed by ^{اَن} — <i>ind.</i> after it ...	592-594
CHAPTER XIV.—THE EXCITATIVE PARTICLES.	
§ 573. ^{لُو} , etc—their meaning—position—inseparable from the <i>v.</i> —followed by the nominal <i>prop.</i> in poetry.	595-596
§ 574. Another meaning of ^{لُو} and ^{لُوْمَا} — ^{لُوْلَا} —the <i>interrog.</i> and <i>neg.</i> ^{لُوْلَا} — ^{لُوْلَا} i. q. ^{لُوْلَم} — ^{لُوْمَا} — ^{اَلَا} — ^{اَلَا} com- pounded of ^{اَن} and ^{لَا} — ^{اَلَا} — ^{اَمَا} —composition of ^{لُو} and ^{اَمَا} — ^{لُو} .	596-601
CHAPTER XV.—THE PARTICLE OF APPROXIMATION.	
§ 575. ^{قَدْ} —peculiar to a certain kind of <i>v.</i> —meanings ...	602-607
§ 576. Inseparable meaning—additional ones ...	607
§ 577. Separation of ^{قَدْ} from the <i>v.</i> —subaudition of the <i>v.</i> — subaudition of ^{قَدْ} .	608-609
CHAPTER XVI.—THE PARTICLES OF FUTURITY.	
§ 578. The ^س , etc—why named <i>ps.</i> of <i>futurity</i> —the <i>p.</i> of <i>amplification</i> —why so named—the ^س — ^{سَوْفَ} —how distinguished from the ^س — ^{اَن} .	610-613
§ 579. ^{اَن} with its <i>v.</i> is equivalent to ^{اَن} with its <i>regs.</i> ...	613
§ 580. ^{اَن} and ^{عَنْ} for ^{اَن} and ^{عَنْ} — ^{لَا} and ^{لَنْ} ...	613-614
CHAPTER XVII.—THE INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.	
§ 581. The Hamza and ^{هَلْ} —prefixed to what <i>props.</i> —the Hamza—its peculiarities—prefixed to the ^ي , the ^ق ,	615-624

	PAGE.
and ^{هـ} هـ —followed by the single term—other meanings of the Hamza— ^{هـ} هـ—its peculiarities.	
§ 582. Theory that ^{هـ} هـ is i. q. ^{قـ} قـ	624-625
§ 583. Suppression of the Hamza	625-626
§ 584. Position of the <i>interrog.</i>	626
CHAPTER XVIII.—THE CONDITIONAL PARTICLES.	
§ 585. ^{اـ} اـ, etc— ^{اـ} اـ — ^{لـ} لـ — ^{لـ} لـ i. q. ^{اـ} اـ	627-635
§ 586. Tenses of the <i>vs.</i> in the <i>cat.</i> of ^{اـ} اـ —mood of the <i>aor.</i> in the <i>prot.</i> and <i>apod.</i>	635-636
§ 587. The ^{فـ} فـ when necessary in <i>apod.</i> —sometimes suppressed or replaced by ^{اـ} اـ.	636
§ 588. ^{اـ} اـ when used	636-637
§ 589. The <i>red.</i> ^{ماـ} ماـ affixed to ^{اـ} اـ	637
§ 590. Position of the <i>cond. p.</i> —suppression of the <i>apod.</i>	637
§ 591. ^{اـ} اـ and ^{لـ} لـ necessarily followed by the <i>v.</i> —explanation of instances to the contrary— ^{لـ} لـ followed by ^{اـ} اـ— <i>pred.</i> of ^{اـ} اـ after ^{لـ} لـ—tense of the <i>v.</i> in the <i>pred.</i> —tense of the <i>v.</i> in the <i>prot.</i> of ^{لـ} لـ—mood of the <i>aor.</i> in the <i>prot.</i> —the <i>correl.</i>	638-646
§ 592. Other meanings of ^{اـ} اـ and ^{لـ} لـ	646-648
§ 593. ^{ماـ} ماـ	649-656
§ 594. ^{اـ} اـ or ^{اـ} اـ	656-661
CHAPTER XIX.—THE CAUSATIVE PARTICLE.	
§ 595. ^{كـ} كـ—analysis of ^{كـ} كـ—case of the ^{ماـ} ماـ	662

	PAGE.
§ 596. <i>Op.</i> of the <i>subj.</i> after كَيَّ — كَيَّ when infinitival, and when causative— <i>reg.</i> of كَيَّ.	662-664
§ 597. Expression of اَنْ after كَيَّ —orthography of كَيَّ and كَيَّ.	664

CHAPTER XX.—THE PARTICLE OF REPREHENSION.

§ 598. كَيَّ — <i>comp.</i> or simple—meanings	665-668
---	---------

CHAPTER XXI.—THE ج.

§ 599. Enumeration—pronunciation—government—the <i>inop.</i> ج —the determinative اَلْ —its meanings—its expression or suppression when necessary—its <i>dial. var.</i> اَمْ —the <i>red.</i> اَلْ — اَلْ used as a substitute for the <i>post. pron.</i> or explicit <i>n.</i> — اَلْ i. q. هَلْ.	669-680
§ 600. The ج of the <i>correl.</i> of the <i>oath.</i> —position of the <i>reg.</i> of an <i>op.</i> conjoined with it—its suppression.	680-681
§ 601. The subsidiary ج —its prefixion to اَلْ —its suppression—the ج when not subsidiary, but <i>red.</i>	681-685
§ 602. The ج of the <i>correl.</i> of لَوْ and لَوْلَا —its suppression—suppression of the entire <i>correl.</i>	686
§ 603. The requisitive ج —its pronunciation—its government and meanings—the ج when dispensed with, and when necessary—rarity of its prefixion in the 1st <i>pers.</i> and in the 2nd <i>pers. act.</i> —its subaudition—perpetually in the 2nd <i>pers. act.</i>	686-690
§ 604. The ج of inception—where prefixed—its priority—position of the <i>reg.</i> of an <i>op.</i> conjoined with it—the ج when not the ج of inception, but the ج of the <i>correl.</i> of the <i>oath.</i>	690-694

	PAGE.
§ 605. The ج distinguishing the contracted from the <i>neg.</i> اَنْ — held by the KK to be i. q. ڤ	694-696
§ 606. The ج governing the <i>gen.</i> ...	696
CHAPTER XXII.—THE QUIESCENT ٓ OF FEMINIZATION.	
§ 607. Definition—why affixed to the attribute—feminization of the <i>v.</i> —this ٓ why quiescent—when mobilized—effect of its mobilization.	697-698
CHAPTER XXIII.—THE TANWĪN.	
§ 608. Definition—kinds of Tanwīn ...	699-703
§ 609. Its quiescence and mobility—its suppression, allowably or necessarily.	703-705
CHAPTER XXIV.—THE CORROBORATIVE ٓ.	
§ 610. Double or single, mobile or quiescent— <i>o. f.</i> —meaning—conjugation of the <i>v.</i> corroborated by the ٓ —the single ٓ where not used.	706-709
§ 611. Both peculiar to the <i>v.</i> — <i>vs.</i> corroborated by them ...	709-710
§ 612. <i>Vs.</i> not corroborated by them—their affixion in requisition—in enunciation after another <i>corrob.</i> , like the ج of the oath and the <i>red.</i> لَ —to the <i>correl.</i> of the condition—to the condition not preceded by لَ —after the <i>red.</i> لَ otherwise than in condition—after ڤ and ڤ̣ —to the <i>aor.</i> devoid of all the foregoing—to the <i>act. part.</i>	710-715
§ 613. The ٓ inseparable and otherwise	715-716
§ 614. Suppression of the double ٓ, allowably—of the single ٓ, necessarily and otherwise.	716-718
CHAPTER XXV.—THE ٓ OF SILENCE.	
§ 615. Definition—when affixed—its suppression ...	719-724
§ 616. Properly quiescent—when mobilized ...	724-725

	PAGE.
CHAPTER XXVI.—THE س AND ش OF PAUSE.	
§ 617. Affixed to the ك of the <i>fem.</i> in pause—ا ش substituted for the ك of the <i>fem.</i> in pause and continuity.	726-727
CHAPTER XXVII.—THE PARTICLE OF DISAPPROVAL.	
§ 618. Definition—when affixed—with or without imitation.	728-730
§ 619. Its meanings ...	730
§ 620. Its affixion to the expression mentioned—to اِنْ after the expression.	730-732
§ 621. Its position in the sentence ...	732-733
§ 622. Its omission allowable or necessary—retention of the Tanwin in pause allowable with it—the ى of silence necessary.	733
CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE PARTICLE OF TRYING TO REMEMBER.	
§ 623. Definition—it is inelegant—when used—how formed.	734
§ 624. Like the augment of disapprobation—but not followed by the ى of silence.	735
PART IV.—The Common Processes.	
CHAPTER I.—COMMON PROCESSES IN GENERAL.	
§ 625. Last part of book—meaning of “common”—common processes— <i>etc.</i> —etymology—definition—conventional applications—syntax excluded—reason for exclusion.	736-737

CHAPTER II.—IMĀLA.	PAGE.
§ 626. Common to <i>n.</i> and <i>v.</i> —colloquial meaning—conventional meaning—an affection of Fatha with or without —classification—a dialectic peculiarity—not practised by Hijāzīs—but by Tamīm, <i>etc.</i> —variously named—its utility—employment optional—its causes, preventives, and preventive of preventives—classification of causes—enumeration and description—all reducible to <i>ى</i> and Kasra—which of the two stronger—more obviously Kasra.	738-745
§ 627. Kasra before when effective—and when not— anomalies with <i>ﺉ</i> —the <i>ﺉ</i> disregarded—effect of disregarding it — <i>دِرْهَمَآك — دِرْهَمَان</i> — their anomalousness—no Imāla when <i>ﺉ</i> is preceded by Damma.	745-747
§ 628. Condition of efficiency in cause of Imāla— <i>pron.</i> <i>لَزَيْدٍ مَالٌ</i> —IM's statement excepted— <i>هَآ</i> of condition—treatment of converted from Tanwīn, and of inflectional Kasra.	747-748
§ 629. Final —its Imāla in <i>v.</i> —and in <i>n.</i> — <i>أَلْعَلَى</i> ...	748-749
§ 630. Intermediate —its Imāla in <i>v.</i> —dispute as to cause—and in <i>n.</i> —dispute as to allowability.	749-751
§ 631. Imāla for consonance	751
§ 632. Imāla prevented by letters of elevation and by , not pronounced with Kasr—reason for such prevention—preventives enumerated—effective	751-756

	PAGE.
in restraining expressed Kasra—and, according to IM, expressed ی—but, according to others, Kasra alone—ی why added by IM—not supplied Kasra or ی—theory that letter of elevation is not preventive in <i>vs.</i> —criticism on <i>exs.</i> cited—or in certain <i>vs.</i> —خَاف—condition of prevention by letter of elevation (1) preceding —(2) following —letter of elevation stronger as preventive after than before —cause of difference in strength.	
§ 633. Letter of elevation treated as preventive when detached—its position— <i>exs.</i> —made ineffective by some—cause not effective when detached—contrast between detached preventive and detached cause—language of IM and BD—objections to it.	756-758
§ 634. Conditions of prevention by , —condition of contiguity to relaxed by some—preventive of preventive—its contiguity to —this condition relaxed by some—بِقَادِرٍ less common than جَمَارِكٌ — بِكَالِرٍ .	758-760
§ 635. Two other causes of Imāla—such Imāla anomalous—اَلْعَصَا — بَابٌ and هَذَا مَالٌ — اَلْعَصَا , etc.—اَلرَّبَا .	760-762
§ 636. Properly no Imāla in فَاعِلٌ from reduplicated—جَوَادٌ and جَادٌ .	762-763

	PAGE.
§ 637. Imāla for conformity	763
§ 638. Faṭḥa pronounced with Imāla before (1) —(2) , —conditions and predicaments of such Imāla —(3) ʔ of feminization in pause—quality of such Imāla— ʔ of intensiveness included, but not ʔ of silence— no Imāla of before ʔ —this exception why inserted by IM—"ʔ", not ʕ, "of feminization" why said—dispute as to Imāla of Faṭḥa before ʔ of silence.	763-768
§ 639. Imāla peculiar to v. and decl. n.—irregular in indecl. n., except مَا and نَا —heard in ذِى, مَتَى, and أَنَّى —some ps. pronounced with Imāla— هِى and حَتَّى —Imāla not forbidden in n. accidentally <i>uninfl.</i> —allowable in <i>pref. v.</i> , and excellent in عَسَى —reason for not pro- nouncing ps. with Imāla—their aplasticity a reason—Imāla in ps. used as proper names— in letters of monograms prefixed to chapters of Kur—various reasons given—and in letters of alphabet.	768-771
CHAPTER III.—PAUSE.	
§ 640. Definition—criticism—another definition—the latter preferable — classification — tentative pause in اَمَّا اِسْتَلْبَثْتُ —in اَلَا يَسْجُدُوْا —and in اَلَا يَسْجُدُوْا —kind of pause meant in this chapter—difference between pausal letter and	772-796

PAGE.

initial—objects of pause—pause common to *n.*, *v.*, and *p.*—its modes—its predicaments—meaning of “predicaments”—principal modes mentioned in IM and And—remaining mode there mentioned—alterations in pause reducible to seven—reduplication virtually included—or to six—pause with no alteration—variability of modes—their inequality in effect—or equality—their allocation—detailed discussion—word paused upon—sometimes pronounced with Tanwīn—pause upon word quiescent in final—upon *n* pronounced with Tanwīn, and not *fem.* with *ḥ*—most frequent *dial.*—upon ذَنْ [°]—dispute about it—upon *n.* mobile in final—modes allowed when final is not *ḥ* of feminization—(1) quiescence—meaning of “mobile” here—exclusion of final in *acc.* pronounced with Tanwīn—sense of “quiescence”—its applicability—its originality and prevalence—its sign—sometimes a circle—treatment of Tanwīn—reasons for it—and of *du.* and sound *pl. masc.*—(2) Raum—explained—allowable with all vowels—its allowability with Fatha—its sign—(3) Ishmām—peculiar to Damma—explained—its name applied by some to Raum—alleged to be allowable with Kasra—its sign—its derivation—its object—question as to allowability of Raum or Ishmām with the *ḥ* of feminization, the *ḥ* of the *pl.*, and the

accidental vowel—reason for disallowance with the *z* of feminization—with the *z* of the *pl.*—with the accidental vowel—(4) reduplication—explained—its object—letter added—sign of reduplication—its rarity—its dialectic peculiarity—its conditions—extent of its occurrence in *nom.*, *gen.*, and *acc.*—and with Damma, Kasra, or Fatha—^{لَقَصَبًا} | anomalous—or merely rare—reduplication not properly applicable to *acc.* pronounced with Tanwīn—(5) transfer of vowel—this also rare—its object—its sign.

- § 641. Its conditions—cases where transfer is not allowable—two of these conditions peculiar to *n.* whose final is not Hamza—transfer of Fatha—of Kasra in ^{نُعَلِّ} —*dial.* of many of the Arabs in case of *n.* whose final is Hamza—*diale.* of some of Tamīm—their treatment of *n.* whose final is not Hamza—*dial.* of Hījāzīs—Hamza elided by them—not by others—transfer in *nom.* and *gen.*—*exs.*—in *acc.*—allowable by common consent when its final is Hamza—dispute as to whether transfer is peculiar to inflectional vowel—Damma transferable from *z* of *pron.*—*exs.*—^{قَالَ} and ^{فَرَبَّ} —transfer to mobile—^{حَانَ} | —^{فَرَبَّ} —pause upon a single letter.

	PAGE.
§ 642. Pausc upon Hamza—this letter either lightened or sounded true—and, in the latter case, made plain—preceding letter quiescent or mobile—pause upon Hamza, when preceded by quiescent, (1) with elision of its vowel—(2) after transfer of its vowel to preceding quiescent—differences between Hamza and other letters in respect of transfer—cause of transfer—no Raum or Ishmām with transfer—alliteration sometimes substituted for transfer—in <i>nom.</i> , <i>gen.</i> , and <i>acc.</i> —Raum or Ishmām allowable with alliteration—further modes of pause—conversion of Hamza after (1) elision of its vowel in <i>nom.</i> and <i>gen.</i> , and transfer of its vowel in <i>acc.</i> —(2) transfer in all three cases—such conversion not an alleviation—(3) alliteration—no Raum or Ishmām with conversion—foregoing modes applicable when preceding letter is quiescent—modes applicable when preceding letter is mobile—Hamza converted by some of the Arabs when vowel of preceding letter is Fatha—but retained when such vowel is Damma or Kasra—foregoing modes practised by those who sound Hamza true—modes adopted by those who alleviate—by people of AlHijāz.	806-813
§ 643. Unsound n.—pause upon unsound n. whose penultimate is (1) quiescent—substitution of ٢ for double ٣—(2) mobile—expression of ٣ of defective when necessary—pause upon	813-826

defective in *acc.*—in *nom.* or *gen.*—elision of its
 ٤ preferable in *nom.* or *gen.* pronounced with
 Tanwīn—opinion of S and moderns—but ex-
 pression allowable—expression preferable in
nom. or *gen.* not pronounced with Tanwīn—but
 elision allowable—argument for expression in
 defective pronounced with Tanwīn—and for
 elision in defective not pronounced with Tanwīn
 —former argument! stronger—classification of
 defective not pronounced with Tanwīn—abbrevi-
 ated triptote or diptote—pause upon (1) tript-
 tote pronounced with Tanwīn—! expressed in all
 three cases—dispute about this !—analysis of
 opinions upon it—language of S—Sf's com-
 ment upon it—its meaning explained by R—
 fruit of this dispute—(2) triptote not pre-
 nounced with Tanwīn, and diptote—their ! re-
 tained—*dial. vars.* of pausal !—nature of !
 converted in some of these *dials.*—^{B. ٥٥} ٤ and
^{B. ٥٥} ٤, —Hamza in ^{B. ٥٥} ٤, a *subst.* for !, not for
 Tanwīn—conversion of ! into Hamza of weak
 authority—as also into ٥ or ٤—such conver-
 sion not found in continuity.

- § 644. Final of *v.*—pause upon *v.* whose final is (1)
 sound—(2) unsound—(a) in *ind.* and *subj.*—
 final not elided here, but quiescent—(b) in *apoc.*
 and *imp.*—with ٥ of silence—or without—

	PAGE.
importation of ʔ of silence—this ʔ why so named—its positions—first position—ʔ allowable here, not necessary—except in one case—another case added by IM—remaining positions to be found in § 648.	
§ 645. Elision of final ى and ى in terminations of versicles, and in rhymes—nearing of “terminations of versicles”—such elision more suitable in <i>ns.</i> than in <i>vs.</i> —elision of quiescent ى and ى in <i>ind.</i> of defective <i>n.</i> —likened to elision of quiescent ى in <i>apoc.</i> of كَان —allowable in terminations of versicles—and sometimes necessary—and frequent in rhymes—elision in these positions thus established— <i>ex.</i> in rhyme—elision of ى of defective <i>n.</i> in continuity—and in terminations of versicles—in pause necessary—or allowable—ى not elided in terminations of versicles, or in rhymes—S's description of reason for elision of <i>rad.</i> ى and ى in rhymes—his meaning—ى not elided in rhymes—elision of pronominal ى and ى (1) in rhymes— <i>exs.</i> pronominal ى not elided—(2) in terminations of versicles.	830-836
§ 646. Pause upon ت of feminization—ت (1) kept in (a) <i>p.</i> —لَاتٌ , بُتٌ , and لَعَلَّتْ —(b) <i>v.</i> —ت why kept in <i>p.</i> and <i>v.</i> —pause upon ضَرَبَتْ —(c) <i>n.</i> , after sound quiescent—(2)	837-847

retained or changed into y in n ., after (a) vowel—(b) unsound quiescent—*s. f.* of verbal و of feminization—of nominal ة —opinion of S, Fr, IK, and most GG—of Th—Tanwīn in *acc.* of n . made *fem.* by ة why not converted into ! —pause with و preferable in sound *pl.* and what resembles it—why preferable—pause with y here—as *dial. var.* or anomaly—*dial. vars.* of هَيَات —its number and pausal form in each *dial.*—opinion of Ks—of GG—of IH— هَيَات mentioned among verbal *ns.*—opinion of R— هَيَات or هَيَات as proper name— أَوَّلَتْ — عَرَقَات or عَرَقَات —analysis of this word—pause with y preferable in other formations—pause with ت in such as رَحْمَةٌ — مِنْ بَعْدِيَّت —opinion of IJ— ت for ة sometimes found in Codex— أَمَرَات —pause in such cases—pause upon ة how affected by orthography of Codex—pause with ت in such as رَحْمَةٌ — أَيْت — أَمَت —sometimes أَمَتَا —pause upon ت —pause upon ت when not for feminization.

- § 647. Continuity treated like pause—mostly in poetry—*exs.*—sometimes in prose—pausal forms thus admissible in continuous speech—*exs.* in prose and poetry— عَهْل and النَّصْبَا —explained as

instances of this treatment—^{أَعْطَنِي أَبْيَضَ} —
unusual quiescence of rhyme-letter—practice
of Hijāzī and Tamīmī.

- § 648. Second position of *z* of silence—*interrog.* مَا
governed in *gen.*, and not compounded with
| ذ — *z* here necessary or preferable—reason
for this difference—third position—*ess.* — *z*
when not affixed—dispute about its affixion to
word ending in quasi-inflectional vowel of
uninflectedness—pause upon *uninfl. ns.*—(1)
حَيَّ حَيَّ or حَيَّ حَيَّ — this | — نَهْ or نَهْ
positions of pause with | — (2) هُوَ or هُوَ —
mostly هُوَ and هُوَ — seldom هُوَ and هُوَ —
but never هُوَ for هُوَ — sometimes only هُوَ and
هِيَ — (3) هِيَ or هِيَ , and هِيَ or هِيَ —
this *z* — pause upon هِيَ — the only quiescent
followed by this *z* — (4) أَكْرَمَكَ or أَكْرَمَكَ —
pause upon ك of *pron., masc. or fem.* —
أَكْرَمَكَ and أَكْرَمَكَ — (5) هُزِنِي and هُزِنِي , or
هُزِنِي and هُزِنِي — sometimes هُزِنِي and هُزِنِي —
retention of هُ better than elision—elision in
acc. better than in *gen.*—practice of some
Readers—(6) هُزِنِي and هُزِنِي and هُزِنِي

852-870

٠ , and مَنَّة and مَرْبَّة — م in first four
 quiescent, and its conj. , or ى omitted—dis-
 pute as to whether this , or ى be part of n.—
 ٠ in last two also quiescent— مَنَّة and مَرْبَّة
 orig. مَنَّة and مَرْبَّة —discussion as to whether
 conj. after ٠ be part of word—in continuity,
 conj. (a) better elided when ٠ is preceded by
 quiescent—but ى of ٠ not elided—(b) indis-
 pensable when ٠ is preceded by mobile—but
 sometimes omitted, and ٠ even made quiescent—
 in pause, conj. always omitted, and ٠ quiescent
 —Raum and Ishmām disallowed by some in
 ٠ of pron., after Damma or Kasra, , or ى —
 allowable, without dispute, after Fat'a—
 allowed by some after any consonant or vowel —
 (7) هَذِهِ — ٠ in هَذِهِ and هَذِهِ —pronounced
 with Kasr and conjoined with ى —never pro-
 nounced with Damm— ى sometimes elided
 from هَذِهِ in continuity, with or without
 quiescence of ٠ —always elided in pause, with
 quiescence of ٠ —(8) هَئِمَّ , هَئِمَّ , and هَئِمَّ , or
 هَئِمَّ , هَئِمَّ , and هَئِمَّ —preferably with ٠ ,
 sometimes without— م sometimes quiescent in
 continuity—(9) مَنَّة and مَنَّة —always
 with ٠ .

- § 649. Pause upon single ن of corroboration after (1) Fat'a—*exs.*—additional *exs.*—(2) Damma or Kasra—this ن treated like Tanwīn—restoration of , of *pl.*—and of ن of *ind.*—practice of Y—disallowed by S.

CHAPTER IV.—THE OATH.

- § 650. Common to *n.* and *v.*—definition—jurative *prop.*, (1) verbal—its *v.* how attached to the sworn-by—quasi-jurative *vs.*—(2) nominal—^{لَهُ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ}—opinion of S—improbabilities in it—opinion of KK—their argument—ل of inception prefixed to ^{لِأَمْنٍ}—vowel of its Hamza—^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ}—meaning of ^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ}—^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ}—oath and *correl.* equivalent to one *prop.*—suppression of (1) the *correl.*—when indicated by (a) the *prop.* enclosing or preceding the oath—this *prop.* a quasi-compensation for suppressed *correl.*—not the *correl.* itself—(b) a context following the oath—suppression of *correl.* necessary or allowable—(2) the jurative *prop.*—sometimes because indicated by an *adv.* to the *v.* of the *correl.*—^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ} quasi-jurative—sometimes not so—^{لِأَمْنٍ} ^{لِأَمْنٍ} also quasi-jurative—sometimes not so—pronunciation of its final—(3) the sworn-by—(4) the oath whose *correl.*

PAGE.

871-873

874-886

	PAGE.
is corroborated by the حَقًّا — ن , etc., used in place of oath—and so نَ —and expressions denoting a vow or covenant—object of oath—three things involved by it—(1) the oath—(2) the sworn-to—what part of it is corroborated by the oath—(3) the sworn-by—not always God.	
§ 651. Liberties taken with oath—(1) suppression of (a) jurative <i>v.</i> —(b) sworn-by—illustration—(c) <i>enunc</i> in nominal jurative <i>prop.</i> —this suppression necessary or allowable—theory of Fr —(d) ن and Hamza of أَمِنَ —dispute as to whether elision of its Hamza be a liberty— أَمُ or أَمُ اللّٰهُ and أَمُ اللّٰهُ and أَمُ اللّٰهُ or أَمُ اللّٰهُ —these contractions used only with اللّٰهُ —Hamza of أَمِنَ or أَمِنَ —(e) ن of مِنَ and مِنَ —(f) jurative <i>p.</i> —(2) substitution of و for jurative و —(3) preference of Fatḥa over Damma in عَمَرُ — <i>dial. vars.</i> of this word— عَمَرُ used in oath.	886-890
§ 652. Oath adjuratory or not— <i>correl.</i> (1) of adjuratory—sometimes headed by أَلَمْ or لَمْ —or by أَنْ —sometimes a mandatory enunciation —(2) of non-adjuratory—four <i>ps.</i> used to connect it with oath—these four why chosen—	891-905

١٥ not used—*correl.* a nominal or verbal *prop.*,
aff. or *neg.*—nominal attended, (1) if *aff.*, by
 ١٥ or ١٥ or both—١٥ uncontracted or contracted
 —nature of ١٥ —wha it is prefixed to— ١٥ in
 ١٥ — (2) if *neg.*, by ١٥ or ١٥ —this ١٥
op. or *inop.*— ١٥ exemptive—or by ١٥ —verbal
 attended, (1) if *aff.*, (a) when its *v.* is a *pret.*,
 by ١٥ with or without ١٥, or by ١٥ alone— ١٥
 best—except with aplastic *vs.*— ١٥ alone, or
 ١٥ alone, allowable—nature of ١٥ prefixed to
correl. separated from oath by condition headed
 by ١٥ —(b) when its *v.* is an *aor.*, by ١٥ with or
 without ١٥ of corroboration—omission of ١٥ —or
 of ١٥ —opinions of BB and KK—*aor.*, in sense of
 present, allowable as *correl.* of oath—and then
 corroborated by ١٥ without ١٥ —(2) if *neg.*, (a)
 when its *v.* is a *pret.*, by ١٥ or ١٥ —if *pret.* in
 sense, by ١٥ —if future, by ١٥ or ١٥ —(b) when
 its *v.* is an *aor.*, by ١٥ or ١٥, the latter with or
 without ١٥ of corroboration—or by ١٥ —*ex.* of
 ١٥ —١٥ and ١٥ disallowed by Mb— ١٥ or ١٥
 not allowable—or very rare—subsidiary ١٥
 often prefixed to *cond.* instrument preceded by
 oath—especially if oath be suppressed—*neg. p.*
 allowably suppressed, (1) in *correl.* of oath.

PAGE.

	PAGE.
from <i>aor.</i> —not from nominal <i>prop.</i> , nor from <i>pret.</i> —(2) otherwise than in <i>correl.</i> of oath, from <i>يَزَالُ</i> , etc., and, in poetry, from other <i>aors.</i> —explanation of apparent suppression of <i>neg. p.</i> from <i>pret.</i> in <i>correl.</i> of oath— <i>anomaly</i> said to be involved in it—opinion of IHsh—of IMH—of R—of Fr—sign of affirmation not suppressed from <i>aor.</i> —suppressed <i>neg. p.</i> always <i>يَ</i> , not <i>مَا</i> —IU and IUK on suppression of <i>مَا</i> —none of the four <i>ps.</i> suppressed except <i>يَ</i> .	
§ 653. Jurative instruments—five <i>ps.</i> — <i>preps.</i> , but named “jurative <i>ps.</i> ”—(1) <i>ب</i> —original jurative <i>p.</i> —suppression of <i>v.</i> with it—substitution of the other four <i>ps.</i> for it—(2) <i>و</i> —its government—(3, 4) <i>ت</i> and <i>ل</i> —(5) <i>مِنْ</i> —disputed as to its origin—not a contraction of <i>أَيْمَنْ</i> or <i>مِنَ اللَّهِ</i> and <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> and <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> — <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> — <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> — <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> —all three <i>vars.</i> said to be contractions of <i>أَيْمَنْ</i> —theory of contraction possible in <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> —not in <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> or <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> —since it would imply occurrence of <i>أَيْمَنْ</i> in <i>gen.</i> or <i>acc.</i> — <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> a possible contraction of <i>أَيْمَنْ</i> , but not <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> — <i>مِنِ اللَّهِ</i> —theories as to their origin.	905-910

	PAGE.
§ 654. Exclusive privileges of ب —mnemonic verses— <i>exs</i> of ب in adjuration—adjuration not an oath —apparent evidence to contrary—but held by IM and R to be an oath—language of AH—and of IJ—IU's definition of oath—exclusion of what does not admit of being pronounced true or false—assertion that adjuration is not an oath— proofs—his opinion correct—language of IHsh — <i>correl.</i> of non-adjuratory oath enunciatory, and of adjuratory oath originative.	910-915
§ 655. Jurative <i>p.</i> sometimes suppressed—then <i>inop.</i> or <i>op.</i> —ب (1) suppressed—together with <i>v.</i> — <i>p.</i> first, then <i>v.</i> —sworn-by governed in (a) <i>acc.</i> by jurative <i>v.</i> understood— <i>exs.</i> —or by <i>trans. v.</i> understood—opinion of IS—(b) <i>nom.</i> —(2) understood—like ل in لَآ أَبُوكَ and لَآ أَبْنُ عَيْكَ —dispute as to whether <i>prep.</i> ل be suppressed here—لَهُ أَبُوكَ — <i>acc.</i> prefer- able— <i>gen.</i> allowable in اَللّٰهُ — <i>ex.</i> —and allowed by KK in other <i>ns.</i> — <i>ncm.</i> necessary in certain phrases— <i>acc.</i> or <i>nom.</i> allowable in others—cases allowed in اَللّٰهُ — <i>ex.</i> of all three cases.	915-920
§ 656. اِيْ هَا اَللّٰهُ suppressed with compensation— —sworn-by then اَللّٰهُ exclusively, and com- pensation the premonitory هَا or <i>interrog.</i>	920-925

Hamza—different opinions on ^{هـ} —or the disjunction of Hamza in ^{الله} —suppressed *p.* why held to be ^{هـ} —necessary after ^{الله} when compensation is ^{هـ} —this ^{هـ} transferred from ^{هـ} —pronunciations of ^{الله} —(1) ^{هـ} —^{الله} —^{هـ} why not elided—(2) ^{الله} —(3) ^{الله} —(4) ^{الله} —^{هـ} how parsed by Khl--and by Akh—sense of *interrog.* Hamza—treatment of Hamza in ^{الله} on prefixion of *interrog.* Hamza—*ex.* of ^{الله} —disjunction of Hamza peculiar to ^{الله} after ^ف with or without *interrog.* Hamza—compensation here the disjunction of Hamza in ^{الله} —not the preceding *interrog.* Hamza—^ف said to be *red.*—proof that the ^{هـ}, the *interrog.* Hamza, and the disjunction of Hamza in ^{الله} are *subst.* for jurative *p.*

- § 657. Nature of ^{هـ} repeated after jurative ^{هـ} —conflicting opinions—which stronger—objection to it—Z's reply—IH's criticism—R's suggestion—sense of ^{هـ} after oath—what governs it in *acc.*

CHAPTER V.—THE ALLEVIATION OF HAMZA.

PAGE.

§ 658. Hamza heavy—produced with difficulty—alleviated by some—by most *Hijāzīs*, especially *Kuraish*—remarks of 'Alī—but sounded true by others—by *Tamīm* and *Kais*—sounding true the *o. f.*, and alleviation an improvement

930-987

—alleviation common to all parts of speech — its three modes—their evolution—(1) change—Hamza omitted by Mb from letters of alphabet —(2) elision—(3) betwixt-and-between—two kinds of last mode—"strange" kind confined to certain positions—Hamza of betwixt-and-between quiescent or nearly so—not found in beginning of sentence —condition of alleviation that Hamza be not inceptive—meaning of "inceptive"—inceptive Hamza too light for alleviation—but sometimes converted into * —Hamza one or two—if one, quiescent or mobile—quiescent Hamza preceded only by mobile—in same word or another—in either case, quiescent Hamza alleviated by change—not by betwixt-and-between—nor by elision—*exs.*—mobile Hamza—preceded by quiescent or mobile—predicament of preceding quiescent —mobile Hamza preceded by quiescent alleviated, (1) when quiescent is a non-coordinative *aug.* ; or *س* , by conversion—i. e., change—no other mode possible—its alleviation not obligatory—opinion of S on *نَبِيٍّ* , *نَبِيَّةٍ* , and

نَبُوَّةٌ —and of IH—(2) when quiescent is |, by well-known betwixt-and-between—elision and change disallowed, and strange betwixt-and-between impossible—(3) when quiescent is a sound letter, or a *rad.* ر, or ي, or a coordinative *aug.* و, or ي, by elision after transfer of vowel to quiescent—not by betwixt-and-between or change—فَوْتُ — رَفُوتٌ and نَشُوتٌ, and كَمَاةٌ and مَرَاةٌ — قَرِيْتُ and خَبِيْتُ — *conjug.* of أَنْطَرُ —*exs.* of alleviation where quiescent is not in same word as Hamza—شَى and سُو —alleviation obligatory in *cat.* of يَرَى, and of *pret.* أَرَى and *uor.* يَرَى —i. e., in certain *derivs.* of أَرَى —أَرَيْتَ —and frequent in *cat.* of سَلَّ —more so in إِسْلَ than in إِجَار —cause of its frequency—consequent elision of *conj.* Hamza—إِسْلَ —distinguished from اَلْحَمْرُ —explanation of mode of pausing upon final mobile Hamza—no explanation needed for quiescent Hamza—two methods of pausing upon final mobile Hamza—the first explained in chapter on Pause—the second begun by alleviating Hamza—modes of alleviating, and then pausing, when Hamza is (1) not preceded by | —(2) preceded by | —Hamza

usually converted into $\text{}$ in latter case—treatment of the two $\text{}$ s—and of acc. pronounced with Tanwin—mobile Hamza continued—of nine kinds when preceded by mobile—whether in same word or not—regular mode of alleviation—this mode impossible in two kinds—these kinds alleviated by conversion—and remaining seven by softening with well-known betwixt-and-between — meaning of “softening” — Hamza not softened when preceded by quiescent—softened Hamza held by KK to be quiescent—but proved by S to be mobile—opinion of Akh on two of the seven kinds—another opinion on these two—reason for latter opinion—no dispute as to remaining five kinds—Hamza sometimes changed into $\text{}$ or quiescent $\text{}$ or $\text{}$ —this change confined to hearsay— مِنْسَاةٌ —but regular in metric exigency—*exs.*

of it not explicable as *dial. vars.*— سَلْتُ ; *aor.*

تَسَالُ , and يَتَسَالَيْنَ or يَتَسَدَّلَانِ said to be *dial.*

vars.— رَاجِي for رَاجِي cited by Sat end of verse as *ex.* of this change—but not really so—

though in continuity الرَّاجِي for الرَّاجِي would be—this change restricted to case where Hamza and preceding mobile are both pronounced with Fath, Damm, or Kasr, respectively— و or ي

	PAGE.
quiescent when thus substituted for Hamza— cases where this change is not allowable— anomalies in connection with initial Hamza— irregular elision of Hamza in نَاسٌ and أَرَبَتْ^٥ or هَلْ رَبَّتْ —elision of Hamza sometimes avoided by transposition.	
§ 659. <i>Imp.</i> of <i>v.</i> whose ف is Hamza quiescent in <i>aor.</i>— خُذْ , كُلْ , and مَرْ —their <i>rad.</i> Hamza elided, and <i>conj.</i> Hamza then dispensed with—their measure—elision obligatory in خُذْ and كُلْ , not in مَرْ —أَوْخُذْ and أَوْكُلْ not said, but مَرْ or أَوْمَرْ —regular form of these three <i>imps.</i>— irregular form always used in أَخَذْ and أَكَلَ^٥ — but either allowed in أَمَرْ —i. e., when incep- tive— in interior of sentence retention of Hamza more frequent—but elision allowable— this subject why discussed here.	956-958
§ 660. Transfer of ^٥Waw from initial mobile Hamza to preceding ل of <i>art.</i>—الْحَمْرُ —الْحَمْرُ with <i>conj.</i> Hamza expressed—ل being construc- tively quiescent—لَحْمٌ with <i>conj.</i> Hamza elided—ل being actually mobile—لَحْمٌ more frequent than لَحْمٌ —الْإِنْتِدَارُ and الْإِسْتِغْفَارُ treated like الْحَمْرُ —مِنْ لَحْمٍ or مِّنْ لَّحْمٍ and مِنْ لَحْمٍ —الْحَمْرُ	958-963

and ^{مِنْ} لَنْ , or لَنْ and ^{مِنْ} لَنْ — ^{فِي} لَعْمَرٍ and
 — اللَّحْمُ and اللَّحْمُ — مَلَكِدٍ — مَانٍ and
 explanation of second ل — ^{مِنْ} لَعْمَرٍ and
 اَقْلَ and اِسْلَ — سَلْ or اِسْلَ — ^{مِنْ} لَعْمَرٍ dis-
 allowed by IH—comparison between ^{الْحَمْرُ} ,
 سَلْ , and قُلْ in respect of retention or elision
 of conj. Hamza—قُلْ how relevant here for
 comparison.

- § 661. Two Hamzas combined—in one word or two—
 when in one word, alleviation necessary—only
 second Hamza changed—their quiescence or
 mobility—if first mobile, and second quiescent,
 then second changed into (1) ! after Fatha—
 اَتَزَرَ 1st pers. sing. of aor. subj. from اَتَزَرَ—
 اَتَزَرَ a mispronunciation — اَتَزَرَ aor. اَتَزَرَ allowed
 by some—but disallowed in KF—(2) اِي after
 Kasra—اَتَزَرَ—اَتَزَرَ—(3) اِي after Damma—
 اَتَزَرَ—if first quiescent, and second mobile,
 which never occurs in position of ف , then, (1)
 in position of ع , first incorporated into second
 —(2) in position of ل , second changed into اِي
 —اَتَزَرَ—incorporation—why not adopted here—
 اَتَزَرَ—اَتَزَرَ—if both mobile, then second changed, (1)

963-986

if final, or non-final but pronounced with Kasr, into ى — (2) if non-final and pronounced with Damm, into و — (3) if non-final and pronounced with Fath, into ا , if first be pronounced with Fath or Damm, and into ى if first be pronounced with Kasr—thus second mobile Hamza either final or not—final of three sorts, and non-final of nine—final changed into ى in all three sorts—non-final into ى in four, and و in five sorts—*exs.* of (1) final—(2) non-final pronounced with (a) Kasr—prescribed action necessary— اِئِمَّة pl. of اِمَام —not اِمَّة — اِئِمَّة in IX. 12—or اِمَّة —its second Hamza converted into ى or sounded true—how pronounced by Readers—softening or sounding true allowed in reading the Ḳur, but not conversion into ى —two former pronunciations not peculiar to اِئِمَّة —conversion best according to GG—(b) Damm—(c) Fath, when first is pronounced with (a) Fath or Damm—pl. and *dim.* of اَدَم —doubt as to whether اَدَم be Arabic—(b) Kasr—opinion of Akh on two of the nine sorts— اِئِم or اِوْن — اِدَم or اِمَم —second changed, or sounded true, when first is aoristic—even if second be pronounced with Fath—this sounding true regular in five *vs.*—but change necessary when first is not aoristic—

doctrine of GG that second must be converted — جَآ^2 orig جَآ^2 — its second Hamza not put betwixt and between — جَآ not a case of two Hamzas according to Khl — خَطَايَا a case of two Hamzas according to S — and therefore mentioned here by IH — but not according to Kh' — opinion of S approved — occurrence of sounding true and softening — interpolation of | between the two Hamzas — no conversion when Hamzas are separated by original | — alleviation preventible by interpolated | — and therefore prevented by existing | — combination of two separate Hamzas ineffective in causing alleviation — ذَوَاتُيْ — Hamza of إِنْعَال elided in *cat.* of أَكْرَم — *o.f.* of أَكْرَم — elision adopted here instead of conversion — and extended to its variations — Hamza converted into ي pronounced with Fath in *cat.* of مَطَايَا — and خَطَايَا — whether word contain two Hamzas or one — treatment of more than two consecutive Hamzas — predicament of two Hamzas combined in two words, if first Hamza be (1) inceptive — first not alleviated — mode of alleviating second — interpolation of | — *ess.* — treatment of two Hamzas after entry of | — treatment of *conj.* Hamza after *interrog.*

	PAGE.
Hamza—(2) not inceptive—unusual to sound two consecutive Hamzas true—treatment of two Hamzas if both be mobile—mode of alleviating (a) first alone—(b) second alone— <i>er.</i> —(c) one of two Hamzas whose vowels are of the same kind—(d) both Hamzas together.	
§ 662. Treatment of two Hamzas (1) if first be quiescent—additional method transmitted by AZ—mode of alleviating (a) first alone—(b) second alone—(c) both together—(2) if second be quiescent—(3) if both be quiescent.	986-987
CHAPTER VI.—THE CONCURRENCE OF TWO QUIESCENTS.	
§ 663. Common to <i>n.</i> , <i>r.</i> , and <i>p.</i> —(1) impossible—i. e., when first is a sound letter—two quiescents then often supposed to concur—explanation of such concurrence—and of supposed quiescent at beginning of sentence—Kasra naturally employed as means for removing difficulty of articulating quiescent—instances of its employment—(2) possible, though heavy, when first is a letter of softness—why possible with unsonant letters—lightest when first is <i>ا</i> —less light when first is <i>ي</i> or <i>و</i> preceded by Damma or Kasra, respectively—least light when first is <i>ي</i> or <i>و</i> preceded by Fatha—last combination peculiar to <i>dim.</i> — ^{و و و} <i>أَءَءَءَ</i> — ^{و و} <i>أَءَءَ</i> and ^{و و} <i>أَءَءَ</i> — incorporation or pause prescribed for second	988-1024

PAGE.

quiescent—pause constitutional or accidental—
 concurrence of two quiescents pardonable (1) in pause—concurrence why allowable here—not real unless first be a letter of softness—when pardonable in continuous speech—(2) in incorporated letter preceded by letter of softness, provided that both be in one word—meaning of “letter of softness” and “letter of prolongation”—ا a letter of prolongation—, and ي letters of softness or prolongation, or neither—these letters loosely termed “letters of prolongation and softness”—concurrence why allowable here—concurrence of three quiescents—of four—(3) in *ns. uninf.* from want of construction—not from existence of preventive of inflection—theory that quiescence of their finals, even in continuity, is pausal—classification of such *ns.*—concurrence why allowable here—reason for quiescence of their finals—opinion of Z—of R—predicament of pause how far made applicable to them—
 مَزْزَمٌ and مَزْزَمَةٌ disallowed by Mz—Ishmām allowed by S in *nom.* of *n.* accidentally, not constitutionally, quiescent in final—but disallowed by Akh—Ishmām allowable in *pre. n.* — فَمِ اللّٰه — Fat. of the م — dispute about فَمِ اللّٰه — فَمِ اللّٰه — (4) words that begin with *conj.* Hamza pronounced with Fat.

and are preceded by *interrog.* Hamza—this combination found in two cases—concurrence why permitted here—*conj.* Hamza not elided—but converted or softened—conversion more appropriate—but productive of irregular concurrence—! converted from Hamza why not elided—(5) in such as ^{لَ}لَهُ ^{لَ}هَا ^{لَ} and ^{أَيُّ} ^{أَيُّ} ^{أَيُّ} — combination of two quiescents optional here, necessary in preceding cases—concurrence of two quiescents not pardonable in other cases—^{أَبْطَانِ} ^{أَبْطَانِ} ^{أَبْطَانِ} anomalous—this remark premature here—first quiescent either a letter of prolongation or not—if first be a letter of prolongation, then (1) second is mobilized if elision of first would lead to confusion—^{يُسْلِمُونَ} , ^{يُسْلِمُونَ} , and ^{تُسْلِمِينَ} — (2) first is elided if its elision do not lead to confusion—concurrence avoided by elision or mobilization of first rather than second—letter of prolongation not mobilized when ^و or ^ي—nor when !—elided in ^{أَعَزُّ} and ^{أَرْمَن} — but not in ^{أَفْرَبَانِ} — ^ل of *apoc.* and *imp.* in defective *v.* how treated upon affixion of *nom. prons.*—why not converted into ! in ^{أَرْضَا} and ^{أَخْتَمَا}—elided ع of ^{أَخَشَى} and ^{أَخْشَوْا} of ^ل of ^{أَخْشَى} , how treated upon mobilization of ^ف , ^و , and ^ي

respectively—ل why treated differently in
 أَخْشَرُونَ and أَحْشَيْنَ from ع in خَافْنَ — ا in
 خَافَا why not elided—vowel of ل in اِنْغَرَبَا ,
 خَافُوا , خَافِي , and خَافْنَ , as also in لَيْخَافَا and
 اِهْخَافُوا , quasi-original—and permanent—hence
 return of their ع s inevitable—ل s why retained
 in اِنْغَزَوْا , اِنْغَزَوْنَ , and اِنْغَزَوْا —first quiescent
 why converted into و or ي , and mobilized, in
 اِنْغَزَا and اِنْغَزَا , اِنْغَزَا and اِنْغَزَا —elided ل of
 رَمَتَا and رَمَتَا not restored in رَمَتَا and رَمَتَا —
 its restoration allowed by some—if first
 quiescent be not a letter of prolongation, then
 it is mobilized—reason for its mobilization—
 except (1) single corrob. ن — (2) ن of كَدْنٌ —
 but not ن of اَلْمُكْنِ — (3) Tanwīn of proper
 name qualified by اِنْ pre. to proper name—
 elision of Tanwīn, on account of concurrence
 of two quiescents, anomalous in other cases—
 اِنْخَشَيْنَ and اِنْخَشَرْنَ — ل of deter-
 mination mobilized with Kasr when prefixed
 to conj. Hamza—transfer of vowel from conj.
 Hamza to preceding quiescent—*ass.* with Fatha
 —and Kasra—and Damma—transfer dis-
 approved—second quiescent mobilized (1) when

mobilization of first is avoided for alleviation—
 انطلق, اِنطَلَق, and يَنْقُذُ —second then pro-
 nounced with Fath, not Kasr—Damma not used,
 with some exceptions, for averting concurrence
 of two quiescents—incorporation practised by
 some in *apoc.* and *imp.* of reduplicated v.—
 omitted by all in اَجَل when a v. of wonder—
 (2) sometimes when second is final of *uninfl.*
 word—حَيْثُ, نَيْفٌ, and حَيْثُ —not a
 case in point—opinion of Z—its refutation.

§ 664. General rule for mobilization in concurrence of
 two quiescents—original vowel Kasra—reasons
 for choosing it—variations from it—(1)
 Damma necessary in (a) م of *pl.*—vowel of
 this م after (a) Kasra on ة —(b) Damma on
 any letter—(b) د —Damma here not neces-
 sary, but usual—(c) نَدَقُ —(2) Fatha prefer-
 able in اَللّٰهُمَّ اَللّٰهُمَّ —Kasra not accepted by
 Readers—question whether اَللّٰهُمَّ اَللّٰهُمَّ is
 relevant here—Fatha on final of v. in اِضْرِبْنِيْ
 and اِضْرِبْنِيْ —(3) Damma allowable on first
 quiescent when second is followed by original
 Damma in same word—not when Damma
 after second is accidental, or in another word—
 —reason for disallowance in latter case—

1024—1039

Kasra allowable in all of this—Damma not approved by Mb after Kasra—مُرِيحِينَ الَّذِي — any vowel allowed by IJ in م of مُرِيحِينَ here—مُرِيحِينَ (4) Damma preferable in (a) ; of *pron.* of *pl.*, after Fat'a, in (a) مُرِيحِينَ — reason for Damma according to Khl—and to others—(b) مُرِيحِينَ — possible explanation of Damma here—(b) ; of *pl.*, after Fat'a, in explicit *n.*—in other cases, pronounced with Kasr after Fat'a—; of *pl.* sometimes pronounced with Kasr—and ; of مُرِيحِينَ and مُرِيحِينَ with Damm—مُرِيحِينَ of *pron.* pronounced with Kasr after Fat'a—and similarly مُرِيحِينَ of *pl.* in explicit *n.*—(c) مُرِيحِينَ (5) Damma or Fat'a allowable, besides Kasra, in مُرِيحِينَ and مُرِيحِينَ—Kasra preferred in مُرِيحِينَ —Fat'a sometimes found—Damma rarely—all of this applicable when *aor.* is pronounced with Damm of مُرِيحِينَ—Kasra or Fat'a allowable when *aor.* is pronounced with Fat. or Kasr—three methods of mobilizing second quiescent in such *imps.* and *apocs.*—(a) Fat'a—(b) alliteration—(c) Kasr —مُرِيحِينَ—Kasra adopted by most in *apoc.* or *imp.* before quiescent—Fat'a by some—Damma by none—IH and Jrb mistaken in allowing it—

	PAGE.
(6) Fat'a necessary before <i>fem. pron.</i> ^{لَا} —and Damma before <i>masc. pron.</i> ^{كَ} —Kasra, in latter position, a weak <i>dial. var.</i> —Fat'a considered erroneous—reason for Damma—this vowel chastest here—Kasra explicable—Fatḥa not forbidden by analogy—Fatḥa necessary in ^ن of ^{مِنْ} before art.	
§ 665. Pardonable concurrence of two quiescents disliked by some Arabs—first quiescent therefore mobilized in two cases—(1) where second is quiescent on account of pause, and first not a letter of softness—vowel of first when second is <i>z</i> of <i>masc.</i> —(2) where second is incorporated, and first an ^ا — <i>exs.</i> of this case not accepted by Mz as precedents—opinion of Z and IH on reason for conversion of ^ا into Hamza pronounced with Fath—alternative theory—vowel of Hamza if <i>o. f.</i> of ^ا be mobile—, or ^ي not converted into Hamza—reason for not altering ,—modes of avoiding concurrence of two quiescents in ^{تَا مَرُونِي} .	1039—1043
§ 666. Vowel of final in (1) ^{مِنْ} , (a) before ^ل of art.—Fatḥa not caused by transfer from <i>conj.</i> Hamza—opinion of K _E —(b) before any other quiescent—Fathā sometimes used in latter case—and Kasra in forms:—(2) ^{اَلْ}	1043—1046

and كَيْفَ (3) حَبِثُ —reasons for Damma
and Kasra here—(4) عَنِ —Damma bad—
feebly explained—and, if correct, restricted
to certain positions—Fatha not allowable.

CHAPTER VII.—THE PREDICAMENT OF THE INITIALS OF WORDS.

§ 667. Common to *n.*, *v.*, and *p.*—one begins with mobile,
and pauses upon quiescent—inceptive letter
mobile—proof of this—beginning with quies-
cent allowed by some—answer to their argu-
ment—such beginning said to occur in Persian
—explanation of this occurrence—pausing upon
mobile not impossible—meaning of “pausing”
here—initials of words generally mobile—
sometimes quiescent—*conj.* Hamza then need-
ed—quiescence of initial found in (1) *ns.*, (a)
non-inf.—(b) *inf.*—initial of these *inf. ns.* why
quiescent—their formations—incorporative
quiescence of initial in *inf. ns.* on measure of
تَأْخُلُ —(2) *vs.*, (a) *pret.* and *imp.* in *vs.* of
inf. ns. before mentioned—(b) *imp.* of 2nd *pers.*
in unaugmented *tril.* sound in ف and ع—(3)
ps., ج and ر of *art.*—quiescence of initial gener-
ally found in *vs.* and *inf. ns.*—not in pure *ns.*,
except ten irregular *ns.*—nor in *ps.*, except ج
and ر of *art.*—Hamza in these ten *ns.* a com-
pensation for actual or virtual elision of ج—

PAGE.

1047—1066

not found in all *trils.* whose **ل** is elided—
 why prefixed to these *ns.*—finals not actually
 elided in **أَيْنَم**, **أَمْر**, and **أَيْمَن**—but virtually
 in **أَيْنَم** and **أَمْر**—actually in **أَيْنَم** if **م** be con-
 sidered *avg.*—and virtually in **أَيْمَن** also—*o. f.*
 of (1) **أَيْن**—proof of Fath of (a) its **ف**—**بِنُو**
 —(b) its **ع**—evolution from *o. f.*—elided **ل**—no
 evidence in **بِنُو**—opinion of Zj—(2) **أَيْنَة**—
 (3) **أَيْنَم**—not to be copied—its **م**—(4) **أَيْنَان**
 —evolution—(5) **أَيْنَتَان**—(6, 7) **أَمْر** and **أَمْرَة**
 —**ل** not elided from **أَمْر**—or **أَمْرَة**—their
 evolution—*conj.* Hamza why combined with
ل—*fems.* of **أَيْن**, **أَيْنَان**, and **أَمْر**—(8) **أَسْم**,
 according to (a) BB—vowel of **س** in *o. f.*
 —derivation—measure—evolution—**أَسْم**—(b)
 KK—evolution—objections to their opinion—
 BB's opinion preferable—(9) **أَسْت**—evol-
 ution—*dial. vars.*—proof of Fath of **ف** and **ع**
 in *o. f.*—(10) **أَيْمَن**—**أ** held by BB to be *sing.*
 —Hamza why prefixed—*dial. vars.*—vowel of
م—language of BD—two more *dial. vars.*—
 modification in vowel of **م**—total number
 fourteen—twenty-two in FB and KF—*conj.*

PAGE.

Hamza in these ten *ns.* a compensation for actual, imaginary, or potential elision of *ج* — Hamza in their *dus.*—Hamza of *جِ* —according to *S.* *aug.*—but, according to *Khl.* *rad.*—and *orig. disj.*—opinion of *IM*—*مِ*— these initials quiescent— and therefore preceded by mobile *aug.* Hamzas in inceptive positions— impracticability of beginning with quiescent not peculiar to Arabic.

1066-1079

§ 668. These Hamzas named "*conj.*" — initial Hamzas *disj.* and *conj.*—also called "*disj.* and *conj.* { *s* "—*disj.* Hamza — why so named—*conj.* Hamza — why so named—definition of *conj.* Hamza—and of *disj.*—*conj.* Hamza *orig.* a Hamza—possibly an *ا* —always prosthetic—its property—not expressed in interior of sentence, except by poetic license—how defined by *IHsh* and *Fk*— dispute about cause of its name "*conj. Hamza*"—causes variously assigned—its positions—prefixed to *n.*, *v.*, and *p.*— not found in (1) *aor.* — *جَدَّ* — (2) *p.* other than determinative or *red* *جِ*—with determinative *مِ* and conjunct *جِ*—but conjunct *جِ* properly a *n.*— *Khl* on Hamza of *جِ* —(3) *tril.* or numerically *quad. pret.*—but found in *quin.* or *sex. pret.*— and in their *imps.*—and in *imp.* of *tril.* whose *aor.* has its second letter literally quiescent—

(4) *n.* other than (a) *inf. ns.* of *quin.* and *sex.*
v.—formula for them—(b) *ten ns.* mentioned
 in § 667—with conjunct ^{اَلْ} and ^{اَيُّم} — ^{اَيُّم}
 as worthy of separate mention as ^{اَيُّم},—dis-
 tinction between them possible—but immaterial
 — ^{اَيُّم}, not specified here—^{اَيُّم}, *dial. var.* of
^{اَلْ}, should be mentioned—rule in case of
 doubt—conjunct ^{اَلْ} —*conj.* Hamza why put
 —dispensed with when quiescent initial becomes
 mobile—^{اَلْ} for ^{اَلْ} —but ^{اَلْ}, rather
 than ^{اَلْ}, for ^{اَلْ} —dispute among BB
 as to whether *conj.* Hamza be *orig.* quiescent
 or mobile—opinion of majority—and of S—its
 vowel, according to latter opinion—and to
 former—opinion of BB—and of KK—objection
 to latter—rules for determining vowel—(1)
 Fatha necessary in ^{اَلْ} —(2) Damma neces-
 sary in (a) *pret. pass.*—(b) *imp.* of *tril.* when
 such *imp.* is *orig.* pronounced with Damm of
 ع —Kasra sometimes found before original
 Damma—causes of these two *vars.*—Kasra
 said to be corrupt—(3) Damma preponderant
 over Kasra in 2nd *pers. sing. fem.* of *imp.* of
tril. when Damma of ع is accidentally replaced
 by Kasra—opinion of F on Ishmām of first
 and third letters here—and of IM—(4) Fatha

PAGE.

preponderant over Kasra in ^ءأَيْمٌ and ^ءأَيْمٌ —

(5) Kasra preponderant over Damma in ^ءأَيْمٌ —

—(6) Damma, Kasra, or Ishmām allowable in *pass.* of such *prets.* as ^ءأَيْمٌ and ^ءأَيْمٌ —

(7) Kasra necessary in remaining cases—vowels allowable on sound or quasi-sound quiescent final before quiescent initial which, at beginning of sentence, would be preceded by *conj.* Hamza pronounced with Damm—*exs.*—meaning of “quasi-sound”.

§ 669. Expression of *conj.* Hamza, in interior of sentence, a gross solecism—except in poetry—elision necessary, in case of choice, except after pause or interruption—stop at beginning of hemistich—^ءأَيْمٌ, ^ءأَيْمٌ, etc., not said—^ءأَيْمٌ a poetic license—^ءأَيْمٌ at beginning of second hemistich—Hamza of *art.*, after *interrog.* Hamza, not elided, but (1) converted into |—and thus retained, though in modified form—contrary to general rule—(2) softened betwixt and between—this treatment extended to every *conj.* Hamza pronounced with Fath—change into | the only method mentioned by F and many—dispute about this |—softening agreeable with analogy—used by Readers, though less approved—easy in comparison with change—no difference here between Hamzas

1079-1085

	PAGE.
of ^{أَلْ} and ^{أَيْمَنْ} — <i>ers.</i> —both methods used among the Seven— <i>conj.</i> Hamza not elided when pronounced with Fat ^h , as when pronounced with Kaar or Damm—nor sounded true.	
§ 670. * of ^{هُوَ} and ^{هِيَ} , when preceded by ^و or ^ف , or by ^ل of inception, often quiescent—sometimes mobile—similarly <i>imp.</i> ^ل with ^و and ^ف —quiescence accidental, but elegant, in ^و —and in <i>imp.</i> ^ل ^{أَهُوَ} and ^{أَهِىَ} , and ^{لَمْ} ^{لَيَقْضُوا} — ^{أَنْ} ^{يَمِلَّ} ^{هُوَ} —absence of <i>conj.</i> Hamza before these initials how explained by IH—his meaning—objections to his theory—what he ought to say—initials here why assimilated to medials—comparative frequency of ^{أَهُوَ} and ^{أَهِىَ} , ^{لَهُوَ} and ^{لَهِىَ} , ^{فَهُوَ} and ^{فَهِىَ} , ^{وَهُوَ} and ^{وَهِىَ} —quiescence allowable in <i>imp.</i> ^ل —not in ^ل of ^{كَيَ} —quiescence of * after ^{لَمْ} —and of <i>imp.</i> ^{لَمْ} ^{لَيَقْضُوا} analogous to ^{مَنْتَصِبٌ} and ^{مَنْتَفِعٌ} — ^{أَنْ} ^{يَمِلَّ} ^{هُوَ} — ^{مَنْتَصِبٌ} superior to it—quiescence an accidental alleviation—and mobilization the <i>o. f.</i> —words of S.	1085-1090
CHAPTER VIII.—THE AUGMENTATIVENESS OF LETTERS.	
§ 671. Common to <i>n.</i> and <i>v.</i> —no augmentation in <i>ps.</i> —	1091-1115.

meaning of augmentation—this process coordinative or non-coordinative—meaning of coordinative augmentation—^{قَرَدَد} coordinated—but not ^{مَقَل}—nor ^{فَعَل}, ^{فَاعَل} and ^{فَاعَل}—meaning of coordination—its use—effect of coordinative augment upon meaning—*aug.* not coordinative when regularly importing a particular meaning—causes of augmentation—(1) indication of meaning—(2) coordination—IM's definition of it—^{قَرَدَد}—(3) prolongation—(4) compensation—(5) magnification of sense, and multiplication of letter—(6) making articulation possible—(7) making the vowel plain, or ^ا completely plain—letters of augmentation, or *aug.* letters, with their mnemonic combinations—best of such combinations—meaning of “letters of augmentation”—reduplicative augment, coordinative or non-coordinative—non-reduplicative coordinative augment—*aug.* repetitive or non-repetitive—repetitive *aug.*—its condition—repetition (a) of two out of three *rad.*—opinion of IM on ^{مَرَرَس} and ^{مَرَرَس}—of KK on ^{مَرَرَس}—(b) of ^ف, or of ^ع separated from its duplicate by a *rad.*—(c) of two letters to form a *quad.*, (1) if its third be not omissible—opinion of KhI and KK—(2) if its third be omissible—opinion of KK—of Zj—of rest of BB—opinion

of KK preferred by BD—non-repetitive *aug.*—
 ش in أَكْرَمَتْكَ — ة omitted by Mb from
 letters of augmentation—these ten letters why
 peculiar to augmentation—و , ي , and ا —
 remaining seven letters — measurement or
 exemplification—its use— قَمَلْ constituted as
 measure—its crude-form, not its actual con-
 formation, here intended—*rad.* how represented
 in measure—this representation explained—
exs. with three *rads.*—and with more—mea-
 surement of *tril.* agreed upon—but of *non-tril.*
 disputed between BB and KK—three opinions
 among KK—thus four measures possible for
 أَكْرَمَتْكَ — *aug.* how represented in measure—
 representation of repetitive *aug.* disputed—
aug. when repetitive, and when not—incor-
 poration or conversion in measure not to be
 reproduced in measure—but transfer or elision
 to be reproduced—some words not measurable—
 IM's definitions of *rad.* and *aug.*—his defini-
 tions (1) explained and exemplified— اِحْتَدَى
 — اِحْتَدَى — (2) criticized—neither definition
 inclusive or exclusive—accurate formula for
 recognizing *aug.*—(3) defended by IUK—im-
 proved definition of *aug.*—indications of aug-
 mentativeness—conditions of augmentation—

these letters previously discussed in Parts I and II—what remains to be mentioned here.

1115-1124

- § 672. Hamza judged to be (1) *aug.*, when initial and followed by three *rads.*—why so judged—such augmentativeness disputed in words whose derivation is unknown—exceptional cases, where Hamza is *rad.*, necessarily—or allowably — ^س ^و ^ع ^ا ^ي ^د ^ع and ^س ^و ^ع ^ا ^ي ^ص ^ر —language of IY and IM—^س ^و ^ع ^ا ^ي ^د ^ع — (2) *rad.*, (a) when initial but followed by two *rads.*, or by four— (b) when non-initial, unless irresistibly indicated as *aug.*—medial or final Hamza when judged to be *aug.*—exception to this rule—two conditions for augmentativeness of final Hamza—IM's version of second condition—alternatives allowable in final Hamza after ^ا separated from the ^ف by a double letter, or by two letters one of which is a soft letter—*exs.*—alternative strengthened by indication to be adopted—correction of IM's version—positions of *aug.* Hamza in *n*.

1124-1130

- § 673. ^ا when judged to be *aug.*—soft ^ا here meant—soft ^ا not initial—*aug.* with three or more *rads.*—but not with only two—this rule true only of *vs.* and Arabic *decl. ns.*—positions of *aug.* ^ا in *n.* and *v.*—^ا not *aug.* at end of reduplicated *quad.*—alternatives allowable in ^ا with two *rads.* and a third letter admissibly *rad.* or *aug.*—coordinative ^ا always final—nature of

	PAGE.
<i>aug.</i> when medial—and when final— of ^{قَبْعَرِي} and ^{كُثْرِي} like of ^{كِتَاب}—meaning of this.	
§ 674. ^ي and ^و when judged to be <i>aug.</i>—their three states—^{أَوَّلِي} and ^{أَيُّلِي}—^{مَدِين} and ^{مَرِيَم}— ^{مَرِيَم} Arabic—opinion of IAL on its measure— said to be foreign—^{يَهْر}—or ^{يَهْرِي}—its first ^ي—why decided to be <i>aug.</i>—both ^ي s not <i>rad.</i> or <i>aug.</i>, nor second <i>aug.</i>—^{عَزْزِيَّت}—its ^و <i>rad.</i>, and ^ي and ^ت <i>aug.</i>—its ^ي not imagined by any one to be <i>rad.</i>—^ي <i>aug.</i> with (1) three <i>rads.</i>—(2) four or more <i>rads.</i>, when it is (a) non-initial—(b) initial, if word be a <i>v.</i>—posi- tions of <i>aug.</i> ^ي in <i>n.</i> and <i>v.</i>—additional <i>exs.</i>—^ي how known to be <i>aug.</i> in these <i>exs.</i>— both ^ي s <i>rad.</i> in ^{مِصِيَّة}—also ^ي in ^{حَاحِيَّت} and ^{عَاعِيَّت}—and in ^{قَوْنِيَّت} and ^{فَوْرَمِيَّت}— not <i>aug.</i> in last two formations—nor ^و—initial ^ي when <i>aug.</i>, and when <i>rad.</i>—^{يَسْتَعْوِز}— <i>rad.</i> in ^{يَا جِج}—<i>aug.</i> in ^{يَا جِج}.	1131-1138
§ 675. ^و not <i>aug.</i> when initial—opinion of majority— ^و of ^{وَرَنَكَل}—^و always <i>aug.</i> when medial with three or more <i>rads.</i>—its positions in such cases —positions of <i>aug.</i> ^و in <i>n.</i> and <i>v.</i>	1138-1141

PAGE.

1141-1150

§ 676. *م* exactly like Hamza in augmentativeness—*aug.* *م* and Hamza mostly initial—non-initial not *aug.*, except when so indicated—Hamza *aug.* in *n.* and *v.*, but *م* only in *n.*—why not in *v.*—initial *م* *aug.* oftener than initial Hamza—universally *aug.* in certain formations—derivation the test—^{مَنْبِجٌ}—made to accord with ^{مَقْتَلٌ} and ^{مَضْرِبٌ} and ^{مَعَزَى} exceptional—derivation of ^{مَعَزَى}—origin of ^{مَعَزَى}—conditions of *aug.* *م*—*exs.*—additional condition—*م* fulfilling conditions judged to be *aug.* in absence of contrary indication—such indication decisive—^{مَرْجُلٌ}—opinion of AAMr—^{مَغْفُورٌ} —^{مِعْزَى} —non-initial *م* not judged to be *aug.*, except on plain indication—^{قَمَارِصٌ} and its *vars.*—opinion of Mz—^{قَمَارِصٌ} —^{قَمَارِصٌ} and its *cat.*—predicament of *م* before three letters, one of which may be *rad.* or *aug.*—and before four or more *rads.* —^{مَنْجَنِيْقٌ} —^{مَنْجَنِيْقُونَ} —opinion of S and Mz—and of others—positions of *aug.* *م*.

§ 677. *ن* *aug.*, (1) when final, upon two conditions—additional condition—apparently applicable to final Hamza also—| and *ن* as a termination—

1150-1159

judged to be *aug.* unless otherwise indicated—
 قَبَّانُ , حَسَّانُ , قَيْنَانُ — مَرَّانُ — مَرَّانُ —
 derivation and declension of حَسَّانُ — and of
 قَبَّانُ — predicament of ن when a double letter,
 or a sound and a soft letter, are interposed
 between the / and the ف — another condition
 added by some— ن of رَمَّانُ (2) when
 medial, upon three conditions—for three rea-
 sons— ن *aug.* in عَرَنْتَنُ — and عَرَنْدَدُ — but
rad. in (a) نَهْشَلُ , though *aug.* in نَرْجِسُ — (b)
 عَنْدَلِيبُ , خَنْدَرِيسُ , عَنَقُودُ , قَنْدِيلُ , قَنْطَارُ —
 though *aug.* in عَرْزُدُ , عَنَسَلُ , حَنْظَلُ , عَنَبَسُ —
 and كَنْابِلُ , خَرْنُوبُ , غَرْنِيقُ (c) — كَنْهَبَلُ —
 (d) عَجَنَسُ — explanation of its double ن —
 its measure—(3) when initial, in *aor.* — ن
 regularly *aug.* in certain formations omitted by
 IM—other *aug.* ن s not mentioned by him—
 positions of *aug.* ن — in other cases ن *rad.*,
 with some exceptions.

- § 678. ضَرْبَةٌ , ضَرْبَتٌ and ضَارِبَةٌ (a) *aug.* in (1) *fem.* ت —
 and ضَرْبَتٌ —but not ضَرْبَتٌ —“*fem.*” explained
 —*sing.* or *pl.*—quiescent ت of feminization

not reckoned by IHsh—nor mobile § by R—(b) ^{أَنْتَ} and its variations—contrary opinions—(2) *aor.*—no other aoristic letter reckoned by IM among *aug.*—aoristic letters held by R to be *ps.*—(3) certain *inf. ns.* with their *derivs.*—and without—(4) *quasi-pass.*—^{تَرَسَ}— in other positions ت not judged to be *aug.*, unless so indicated—^{تَرْجَمَانُ} — *aug.* when (1) initial — ^{تَفَعَّلَ} — (2) final — ^{تَعَلَّوْتُ} — and ^{تَعَلَّوْنِي} — ^{تَفَعَّلُوتُ} — ^{تَفَعَّلُوتُ} — opinion of S on final ت after *aug.* preceded by three or more *rad.* — and after *aug.* ^ي preceded by three *rad.* — ^{سَيَرَوْتُ} — ^ن of ^{عَنْكَبُوتُ} — (3) medial—^{كَلَّتَا} and ^{سَتَعُورُ} — in other cases ت *rad.*, unless otherwise indicated.

§ 679. ʾ *aug.* in pause—ʾ and ل rarely *aug.*—*exs.* of ʾ — ^{أَمَاتَ} and ^{أَمَهَتْ} for ^{أَمَاتَ} and ^{أَمَ} — ^{أَرَأَقَ} for ^{أَرَأَقَ} — *ex.* of ل — neither ʾ of silence, nor ل of distance, really *aug.*—ʾ a letter of augmentation—regular only in pause—necessary there, or allowable—its augmentativeness denied by Mb—but genuine, though rare—proved by (1) ^{أَمَهَاتُ} for ^{أَمَاتُ} *pl.* of

1166-1173

^{2 2}م —verse combining both *dial. vars.*—distinction between ^{o a t}ا مات and ^{o a t}ا مهات in use—^{o a t}ا مهة for ^{2 2}م —its measure—theory that its *z* is *rad.* —^{2 2}م and ^{o a t}ا مهة then two different *o. fs.*—weakness of this theory—no argument from transmission of ^{o a t}تا مهات in the 'Ain—authority of the 'Ain not admitted by F—(2) ^{o a t}ا هراق for ^{o a t}ا راق —Mb's only answer to ^{o a t}ا هراق — *z* in ^{o a t}ا راق , and in ^{o a t}هبلع and ^{o a t}هجرع —in ^{o a t}دركولة rightly held to be *aug.*—similarly in ^{o a t}هلقامة — *z* in ^{o a t}سلوب — *z* of silence not really a letter of augmentation.

- § 680. ^{o a t}ش and ^{o a t}كسكة of ^{o a t}س *aug.*, (1) regularly—^{o a t}كشكة —refutation of Z on former—(2) by hearsay ^{o a t}اسطاع —theory of S—loss of mobility in ^{o a t}ع of ^{o a t}ا طاع and ^{o a t}ا راق —anomalous use of ^{o a t}س and *z* in ^{o a t}اسطاع and ^{o a t}ا هراق as compensation for it—*aor.* of ^{o a t}اسطاع according to S—criticism of Mb on his theory—theory of Fr—*aor.* according to him—objection to his theory—^{o a t}س neglected by IM and his son—only nine letters of augmentation mentioned in Alfiya—excuse for omission of ^{o a t}س .

	PAGE.
§ 681. <i>ل</i> <i>aug.</i> in (1) <i>dem.</i> —added there to indicate distance—generally mobile, and pronounced with <i>Kasr</i> —(2) ^{عَدَلٌ} , ^{زَدَلٌ} , and ^{فَحَجَلٌ} — ^{عَدَلٌ} ambiguous— <i>ل</i> used as a letter of augmentation—but rarely—being the least <i>aug.</i> letter—regular only in <i>dem.</i> —but heard in other words—opinion of Akh on <i>ل</i> of ^{عَدَلٌ} — contrary opinion expressed by him—remaining instances dubious — augmentativeness of <i>ل</i> denied by Jr—no evidence of it in <i>ل</i> of <i>dem.</i> —this <i>ل</i> rightly not a letter of augmentation — <i>ل</i> explained by him as <i>rad.</i> in three other words—but apparently <i>aug.</i> in all.	1176-1179
§ 681 A. Letters of augmentation when judged to be <i>rad.</i>	1180-1181
CHAPTER IX.—THE SUBSTITUTION OF LETTERS.	
§ 682. Found in all three parts of speech—definition given (1) in SH—incorporative substitution not meant—compensation excluded—and restoration—and conversion—(2) in IKn—difference between these two definitions conversion included by IY—less comprehensive than substitution—peculiar to unsound letters and Hamza —compensation different from both—meaning of “original” and “substituted” or “ <i>subst.</i> ” —classification of substituted letters — IM’s object in this chapter—incorporative substitution	1182-1203

not considered here—letters of non-incorporative substitution common in (1) etymology—substitution of other letters anomalous or rare—excluded by “common”— & not mentioned by IM in Tashil—nor fully discussed by him here—(2) speech of Arabs—mnemonic phrases combining each of these two sets of letters of non-incorporative common substitution—remaining letters of alphabet anomalously substituted—implied instances of substitution common in speech of Arabs—meaning of “common” in this phrase—dialectic substitution a department of lexicology rather than etymology—this the language of IM—letters of general, inclusive of necessary, substitution reckoned by many as twelve—reduced by some to eleven—increased by others to fourteen—and so stated by IH—but asserted to be reckoned by Z as thirteen—this reckoning disapproved by IH—substitution of ^سإِسْمَع in ^سإِسْمَع merely incorporative—but not in ^سإِسْتَحْدَ—fifteen really mentioned by Z—these being often substituted—eleven mentioned by S and IJ—seven added by some, making eighteen—opinion of S the well-known one—^ص and ^ج added by Sf—and ^شكَشَّكَ of ^س not reckoned by S—^ث said to be substituted for ^ف—^ب for ^م—^ح for ^خ—

PAGE.

ع — ت and ق for ك — ث for ف — ل for ,
 for Hamza—these substitutions rare and ano-
 malous—originals of substituted letters—sub-
 stitution recognizable by reversion to original—
 أَفْطَلُ and لَصْتُ — أَفْطَلُ — أَفْطَلُ — أَفْطَلُ —
 from absence of reversion—*subst.* said by IH
 to be recognizable by (1) “the paradigms of
 its derivation”—meaning of this phrase—
 أَفْطَلُ and أَفْطَلُ — (2) “the paucity of its
 usage”—meaning of this phrase— أَفْطَلُ —
 substitution here recognizable by first test also—
 this *pl.* not from أَفْطَلُ — (3) “the fact that
 it is a *deriv.*, while the letter is an *aug.*”—
 أَفْطَلُ — (4) “the fact that it is a *deriv.*,
 while it is a *rad.*”— أَفْطَلُ — meaning of last
 two phrases—mode of determining whether
subst. be in *deriv.* or in *o. f.*—obscurity of
 IH’s expressions here—(5) “the fact that an
 unknown formation would be entailed”—
 أَفْطَلُ , أَفْطَلُ , أَفْطَلُ , أَفْطَلُ — أَفْطَلُ — أَفْطَلُ —
 أَفْطَلُ and أَفْطَلُ not unknown—*subst.*
 how recognizable in them—causes of substitu-
 tion.

§ 683. Hamza substituted for seven letters—its substi-
 tution for letters of softness regular and

1203-1236

irregular—regular necessary and allowable—
 necessary found in ل , ع , and ف —order
 of mention—substitution for , and ی necessary
 in four cases, where , or ی is (1) final after
aug. ا — ⁸دَار — ⁸آی — ا associated with , and
 ی —substitution retained with adventitious ة
 of feminization, but disallowed with un-
 adventitious — converse case—predicament of
 two *augs.* of *du.*—no substitution in ⁸فَار curtailed
 form of *voc.* ⁸فَارِي — or ⁸فَارِي — , of ⁸فَار not
 considered final—amendments suggested by A
 and IUK in IM's rule for this case, and objec-
 tions to them—manner of substitution—(2) ع of
act. part. from *v.* whose ع is transformed—this
 substitution extended to ⁸فَاعِل and ⁸فَاعِلَةٌ when
 not *act. parts.*—dispute as to whether *act. part.*
 be subordinate to *v.* in transformation and
 sounding true—manner of substitution— , or
 ی disregarded in *act. part.* by Mb—Hamza in
 both ⁸قَاتِل and ⁸بَاتِل written as ی —but not
 changed into pure ی in either—*rad.* ی not
 sounded true in ⁸بَاتِل , any more than *rad.* , in
⁸قَاتِل —notting of ی in ⁸قَاتِل and ⁸بَاتِل dis-
 allowed—(3) after ا of ⁸مَفَاعِل in *pl.*, when

such , or ی is an *aug.* letter of prolongation third in *sing.*— ۱ associated with , and ی —IM's rule for third case—reason given by IJ for converting this letter of prolongation into Hamza—and by Kh—no conversion when , or ی in *sing.* is (a) not a letter of prolongation—(b) not *aug.*—مَصَائِبُ and مَعَائِشُ anomalous—as also مَعَائِشُ —(c) not third—(4) second of two soft letters having ۱ of مَعَائِلُ between them—reason for changing soft letter after ۱ of *pl.* into Hamza—dispute as to whether this substitution be peculiar to *pl.*—this Hamza also written as undotted ی —fifth case peculiar to , —IHsh's rule for it—two cases included under this rule—لَوْدَى and زَوْدَى —substitution in these *exs.* not necessary, but allowable—rule given by Z and IY—by R—by ۱ —four cases excluded by A's rule—change in them not necessary, but allowable—dispute about it fourth—opinion preferred by IM—two cases included, where change is necessary—condition requisite in second , —change of first necessary where condition is fulfilled, and allowable elsewhere—restriction as to initiality of first , —theory of IM that conjunction of the two ,s should

not be accidental—opinion of others—allowable substitution of Hamza for letter of softness when (1) a , permanently pronounced with Damm—R's formula for it—this substitution good, regular—no substitution when , is (a) accidentally pronounced with Damm—(b) doubled—(2) a ى pronounced with Kasr between | and double ى —irregular substitution of Hamza for letter of softness when (1) an |, (a) to avoid concurrence of two quiescents—(b) from proximity of outlets—(2) a , when (a) an initial, pronounced with (a) Kasr—cause of this substitution—its irregularity disputed— , of طَوِيل not converted—(b) Fath—(b) a letter of prolongation—reason for substitution here—(3) a ى when (a) an initial pronounced with Fath—' اَدَى for اَدَى —dispute as to whether it is a *dial. var.*— اَلَل for اَلَل —(b) a letter of prolongation—substitution of Hamza for ى and ع rare, irregular—substitution for ى in (1) مَاء and اَمَوَاء —evolution of مَاء —its *pl.* of paucity—and of multitude—substitution, though anomalous, obligatory in مَاء , not in اَمَوَاء — اَل and اَل — (2) اَل and اَل —Hamza a *subst.* for ى in اَل —not in اَل —substitution for ع —

أَبَاب —these allowable and irregular substitutions why not mentioned here by IM—substitution of Hamza for خ and غ—very strange.

- § 684. ا substituted for four letters—or five—its substitution for و and ي regular and irregular—regular upon eleven conditions, (1) that they be mobile—(2) that their vowel be original—(3) that letter before them be pronounced with Fath—(4) that this Fatha be conjoined with them—these four conditions indicated by IM—(5) that their conjunction be original—this condition omitted in IM, IA, and And—(6) that letter after them be mobile if they be ع s, and be not ا or double ي if they be ل s—this condition indicated by IM—*exs.* of ع and ل sounded true on breach, and transformed on fulfilment, of this condition—يَخْشَوْنَ and غَزَزُوا—but, يَمْكُونُ — عَصَوْنَ — رَمِيَتْ — غَزَزُوا — according to some, رَمِيَتْ and غَزَزُوا — reason for sounding و or ي true before ا or double ي —(7, 8) that neither of them be ع of فَعْل whose *qual.* is اَفْعَلْ, or of its *inf. n.* —these two conditions indicated by IM—reason for sounding ع true in such *v.* or *inf. n.* —خَافَ —(9) that و be not ع of اِفْعَلْ denoting reciprocity—this condition indicated by IM—

1236-1255

إِجْتَاَزَ , إِنْخَتَانَ , إِرْتَابَ — this condition not applied to ي — (10) that neither of them be immediately followed by another transformable letter—this condition indicated by IM—first of two consecutive transformables usually sounded true—second being transformed—or sounded true—first sometimes transformed, and second sounded true—^{غَايَةَ} — ^{ثَايَةَ} , ^{طَايَةَ} , and ^{أَيَةَ} (for ^{أَيَّةَ})—objections to statement that ^{أَيَةَ} is for ^{أَيَّةَ} — or ^{أَيَّةَ} — or ^{أَيَّةَ} — six modes of accounting for ^{أَيَةَ} — or eight—consequential transformation—two transformations allowable when separate, and not absolutely disallowed by IM when consecutive — (11) that neither of them be ع of word ending in augment peculiar to *ns.*—this condition indicated by IM—^{مَاعَانُ} and ^{دَارَانُ} — conflict of opinion when word ends in | and ن — or abbreviated | of feminization—^ة of feminization disregarded—two other conditions—that ع be not a *subst.* for a letter not transformable—nor be in place of such a letter—reason for sounding ي true in ^{أَيْسَ} , as explained by IM—and by some—another condition—not needed—^{حَارِي} — ^{طَائِي} and

يَا عَسْ and يَاجُلْ — مَازُورٌ — دَارِي — weakness of two last — يَ of *du.* convertible into | — substitution of | for Hamza (1) obligatory — meaning of “obligatory” — (2) regular, but not obligatory — its substitution for ن or Tanwīn in pause upon (1) *acc.* pronounced with Tanwīn — (2) *v.* to which single *corrob.* ن preceded by letter pronounced with Fath is affixed — تَاجِبٌ for (a) تَاجِبٌ — (b) تَاجِبٌ — (3) اِنَّ — | why substituted for ن in these positions — its substitution for ؤ — اَلْ for اَلْ — explanation given in KF.

- §. 685. يَ most extensive *subst.* — substituted for nine letters — its substitution why so frequent — regular and anomalous — regular for three letters — for | in two cases, where preceding letter is (1) pronounced with Kasr — تَيَاتٌ and ضَرَابٌ — | why then converted into يَ — (2) يَ of *dim.* — for و in ten cases, where و is (1) preceded by Kasra, and (a) final — و why then converted into يَ — (b) before ة of feminization — و why then converted into يَ — no distinction here between separable and inseparable ة — two anomalies — (α) سَوَاسَةٌ — its measure and other peculiarities — (b)

1255—1300

³مَقَاتِلَةٌ — ³مَقَاتِلٌ or ³مَقَاتِلٌ, *pl.* — ³مَقَاتِلُونَ — no third
 anomaly — ³سَوَا used as *pl.* — ³سَوَا and
³مَقَاتِلَةٌ — IBr's explanation of ³سَوَا — (c)
 before | of feminization, abbreviated or pro-
 longed — (d) before *aug.* | and ن — (2) ع of
inf. n. having the ع of its *v.* transformed, and
 its own ع preceded by Kasra and followed
 by | — ³سَوَا and ³سَوَا — ³لَوَا and ³جَوَا —
³دَوَا and ³حَوَا — transformation rare
 where | is lacking — ³تَم — anomalous to sound
 , true when conditions of transformation are
 fulfilled — ³نَوَا — no counterpart of it — ³قَوَا
 not an *inf. n.* — (3) ع of *pl.* having its ل
 sound, and its ع preceded by Kasra, and, in
sing., either (a) transformed — , then over-
 powered by Kasra in *pl.* — no necessity for |
 after it here — ³حَوَا — or (b) quiescent, pro-
 vided that in *pl.* it be followed by | — , then
 overpowered by Kasra in *pl.* — five conditions
 of conversion here — , sounded true if | be
 missing — ³تَم — explained as expanded from
³تَم — or contracted from ³تَم — or trans-
 formed from ³تَم to distinguish *pl.* of ³تَم bull

from *pl.* of ^{٥٥}قُرْ slab (of dried curd)—, also sounded true if mobile in *sing.*—^{٥٥}طَال and ^{٥٥}جَاد—or if *ل* be unsound—(4) final, fourth or upwards, and after *Fat'a*—, why changed into *ي* in *pret.* and *pass. part.*—*pret.* here conformable to *aor.*, and *pass. part.* to *act. part.*—^{٥٥}يَشَايَان and ^{٥٥}تَدَاعَيْنَا and ^{٥٥}تَقَارَيْنَا —(5) quiescent, single, and immediately after *Kasra*—^{٥٥}جَلَوَان and ^{٥٥}سَرَار and ^{٥٥}إِجْلِيَان and ^{٥٥}إِدْنِيَان —(6) *ل* of *ep.* —^{٥٥}إِجْلِيَان and ^{٥٥}إِدْنِيَان —*eps.*—use of ^{٥٥}إِدْنِيَان as substantive—^{٥٥}فَعْلَى of substantive ^{٥٥}إِلْتَصِيَا —^{٥٥}إِلْتَصِيَا not altered—conflict of opinion—(7) combined with *ي* in single, or virtually single, word, while first of them is quiescent, original in nature and quiescence—^{٥٥}سَيْد and ^{٥٥}مَيْت—their measure ^{٥٥}فَعْلَل —not ^{٥٥}فَعْلَل —^{٥٥}لَى and ^{٥٥}طَى —, sounded true if , and *ي* be in separate words—or if first of them be mobile—or adventitious in nature—or quiescence—^{٥٥}عَوَّة — ^{٥٥}حَيَوَّة and ^{٥٥}عَوِيَّة , ^{٥٥}أَيَوْم , ^{٥٥}ضَيُون — ^{٥٥}رِيَا and ^{٥٥}نَهْو —*dim.* of *n.* whose third is a mobile , , and whose broken *pl.* is on measure of

مُفَاعِل —treatment of this , in *dim.* how accounted for—*dim.* of اَسْوَد when an *ep.*—of عَمُود and عَمُود —*pl.* and *dim.* of ضَمُون —(8)
 ل of مَفْعُول from *v.* whose ع is pronounced with *Kasr* in *prot.*—this ل why converted into ي —
 مَرَضُو —, sounded true if ع of *v.* be pronounced with *Fath*—مَعْدِي —reason for either treatment of , —different versions of *ex.* cited in *Aud*—(9) ل of *pl.* نَعُول —نَفَى , عَصَى , and دَلِي —sounding ل true anomalous in *pl.*—necessary in *sing.*—عَلَى and نَسَى —IM's language in *Alfiya*—(10) ع of *pl.* نَعَل sound in ل —نَوْم and صَوْم —نَدِيم and صَدِيم —more frequent—, sounded true if ل be unsound—or be separated from ع by ا —نِيَام anomalous—substitution of ي for ا and , in *gen.* and *acc.* of *du.* and *perf. pl. masc.*—its substitution (1) for ا (a) regular—(b) anomalous or weak—(2) for , (a) regular—(b) anomalous—dispute as to regularity of صَدِيم —and of يَبْجَل , صَبِيَّة , and نَدِيم —its substitution for Hamza (1) regular, but not obligatory—(2) necessary—substitution of , and ي for Hamza necessary in two

PAGE.

cats.— ى anomalously substituted for many letters—its substitution for rest of above-mentioned nine letters confined to hearsay—frequent in such as (1) أَملَيْتُ and تَصَيَّتُ — meaning of “such as”—second duplicate not converted in unaugmented tril.—substitution of ى for (a) first duplicate in فَعَالٌ when a non-inf. substantive—not ending in ة of feminization — دِيَابِيجٌ and دِيَابِيسٌ — (b) second duplicate or third triplicate in (a) أَمَلْتُ — dispute as to whether this form be *deriv.* or original—(b) تَصَيَّتُ — (c) دَرَبِيكٌ — (d) لَمْ يَتَسَنَّ and تَطَنَّهُتْ — (e) سَرِيَّةٌ — تَسْرِيَتٌ — (f) يَأْتِمَى — تَقَضَّى not used—(g) يَأْتِمَى — (h) تَصَدِيَّةٌ — its measure and formation—(i) تَلَعِيَتٌ — its formation—(j) دَهْدِيَّتٌ and مَكَائِيَّتٌ — their formation—(k) قَبْرَاطٌ , دِيَابَاجٌ , دِيَوَانٌ — (m) دِيَابَاجٌ — their formation—(n) دِيَمَاسٌ and شَهْرَازٌ — (o) أَنَامِيٌّ — (2) — its *sing.*—substitution of ى for ع , ب , س , and ث —these four

	PAGE-
substitutions weak—and for ج — ی substituted for eighteen letters in all.	
§ 686. , substituted for three letters—for in one case, where preceding letter is pronounced with Damm—نَيْبٌ—for ی in four cases, where ی occurs (1) quiescent, single, in a <i>sing.</i> , and after Damma—ی unchanged if mobile—or incorporated—or in a <i>pl.</i> , preceding Damma being then converted into Kasra—(2) after Damma as ل of (a) فَعَلٌ—(b) a <i>n.</i> ending in fundamental, inseparable, & of feminization—رَمِيَانٌ—(c) a <i>n.</i> ending in <i>aug.</i> ا and ن —سَعِيًا , —(3) as ل of فَعَلِيٌّ when a substantive—طَوْبِي , رَايَا , and طَافِيَا said to be anomalous—meaning of “anomalous”—spellings of طَافِيَا—(4) as طَوْبِي لَكَ when (a) a substantive—طَوْبِي , اَلطَّوْبِي , and اَللَّوْسِي , and اَللَّخْزَرِي — Damma of فَعَلِيٌّ , when a pure <i>ep.</i> , said by GG to be converted into Kasra—فَعِلِيٌّ and حَيْكِي—opinion of IM and his son—its differences from saying of GG—language of Shl—طَائِي as a substantive—substitution of , (1) for ا (a) obligatory in such as (a) فَوَارِبُ	1300—1320

and ضَوْرِبٌ —cause of conversion in *dim.*—and
 in broken *pl.*—(b) ضَوْرِبٌ —(c) اَوْدِمٌ and
 حَوِي —(e) نُضَوْرِبٌ and ضَوْرِبٌ —(d) اَوْدِمٌ
 and عَصْرِي —(f) اَلْوَانِ , etc., and اَلْوَاتِ , etc.,
 —cause of conversion— | s here assumed to be
 orig. و s—(b) weak in such as اَنْعَر and حَبَلُو
 —every final | converted by Fazāra and some
 of Kais into ى in pause—reason for such
 conversion—heaviness of ى why tolerated in
 pause—similar excuse for conversion of | into
 Hamza— ى retained by Tayyi in continuity—
 | converted by some of Tayyi into , in pause—
 ى more frequent than , in *dial.* of Tayyi— ,
 retained in continuity—reason for conver-
 sion of | into ى or و —(2) for ى (a) obliga-
 tory in such as (a) طَوْبِي , مُوسِرٌ and مُوتِنٌ
 and مَيَاتِينٌ , مَيُوسِرٌ and مَيُوتِنٌ — بَوَطَرٌ
 and بَقْوِي —(b) ضَوْرِبٌ — بِيضٌ — مَيَاسِرٌ
 —(c) اَمْوِي —(b) anomalous, weak, in
 such as (a) مَمْضُو —(b) مَمْشُو and مَمْشُو —reason
 for change of ى into , here—(c) جَبَارَةٌ —
 dispute as to reality of change in مَمْضُو and
 جَبَارَةٌ —*dims.* of شَيْءٌ and عَيْنٌ —of ضِيْعَةٌ and

	PAGE.
^{٥٥٠} —retention of ^{٥٥٠} not obligatory—opinion of IM—^{٥٥٠} ^{٥٥٠} and ^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠} —the last said to be a weak <i>dial. var.</i>—substitution of ^{٥٥٠} for Hamza (1) allowable—^{٥٥٠} ^{٥٥٠}, <i>pl.</i> ^{٥٥٠} ^{٥٥٠}, not a satisfactory <i>ex.</i>—(2) necessary—substitution of ^{٥٥٠} for ^{٥٥٠}.	
§. 687. ^{٥٥٠} substituted for four letters, (1) ^{٥٥٠}, necessarily, in ^{٥٥٠} alone—evolution of ^{٥٥٠} from ^{٥٥٠} —vowel of its ^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠}, generally restored in prefixion—^{٥٥٠} in ^{٥٥٠} said by Akh to be a <i>subst.</i> for ^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠} (a) aprothetic—(b) <i>pre.</i> to ^{٥٥٠} of 1st <i>pers.</i>—^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠}, ^{٥٥٠}, and ^{٥٥٠} —^{٥٥٠} ^{٥٥٠} more correct than ^{٥٥٠} —(c) <i>pre.</i> to explicit <i>n.</i>, or to <i>pron.</i> other than ^{٥٥٠} of 1st <i>pers.</i>—^{٥٥٠} combined with ^{٥٥٠} in ^{٥٥٠} —explanation suggested by F—opinion of S—another explanation reported by F—opinion of IJ—<i>dial. vars.</i> of ^{٥٥٠} —(2) ^{٥٥٠} of <i>art.</i>, in <i>dial.</i> of some—(3) ^{٥٥٠}, (a) regularly before ^{٥٥٠}, when ^{٥٥٠} is quiescent—language of IM—reason of conversion—immaterial whether ^{٥٥٠} and ^{٥٥٠} be in one word or two—^{٥٥٠} written as ^{٥٥٠}, though pronounced as ^{٥٥٠} —change of ^{٥٥٠} into ^{٥٥٠} not properly termed “conversion”—(b) anomalously	1320—1335

	PAGE.
without ب, when ن is (a) quiescent—(b) mobile—converse substitution of ن for م — (4) ب in (a) بَذَاتٌ مَخْرَجٌ —opinions of IS and IJ—sometimes pronounced with undotted ح — (b) رَانِمٌ —opinions of AASh and IJ—(o) كَنَمٌ —(d) نَعَمٌ — م why used as <i>subst.</i> for these four letters.	
§. 688. صَنَعَانِيٌّ — د, (1) substituted for four letters, and رَانِيٌّ — opinion of S—of Mb—of others—that of S preferable— ن here why not a <i>subst.</i> for Hamza of feminization—(2) ل — لَعَنٌ orig. لَعَلٌ —or a separate <i>dial. var.</i> — لَعَنِيٌّ and رَانِيٌّ characterized by IH as anomalous, and لَعَنٌ as weak—(3) م — (4) Hamza—alleged substitution of ن in نَعْلَانٌ, masc. of نَعْلِيٌّ, for Hamza of نَعْلَانٌ — "substitution" here merely alternation—this application of "alternation" tropical.	1335—1338
§. 689. ت substituted for seven letters, (1, 2) د and ي, when (a) ا —such substitution (a) regular in فَعَّلٌ and its variations—meaning of IH's language—this substitution how indicated by IM—reason for change of ف into ت —theory that substitution here is	1338—1356

always for **ی** — **ا** not included with **و** and
ی — dialectic peculiarities — **اَوْنَمِنَ** and **اَيَزَرَ**
 — (b) irregular in numerous expressions — **نَجَاةٌ**
 and **نَخْمَةٌ**, **تَكَاةٌ**, **تَكَلَانٌ** — **تَبَاةٌ** — **تَرَاثٌ**
 and **تَكْرَى** — **تَقَاةٌ**, and **تَقْوَى**, **تَقِيَّةٌ** — **تَبْمَةٌ**
 — measure of last two — **تَوْرَاةٌ** and **تَوْرَاةٌ** — **تَكْرَى**
 necessary in default of **تَوْرَاةٌ** —
اُخْتٌ in (a) **ل**, in (b) **اُخْتٌ** and **تَلَاكٌ** — **تَوَامٌ**
 — their **rad.** — meaning of "**rad.**" —
 sign of feminization in them — **اِبْنَةٌ** used
 oftener than **بِنْتٌ** — Sf's opinion on **ت** in
 (d) **كَلَمًا** — (e) **هَذِهِ** — (b) **اُخْتٌ** and **بِنْتٌ**
 — (e) **اُخْتٌ** — its **subst.** for **و** or **ی** — **اُسْتَوُوا**
 — its **subst.** for **ی** — its formation — **ت** in
 (f) **اُخْتٌ** contrasted with **ت** in **اُخْتٌ**
 — their **dial. vars.** — their **ت** not a
subst. for **و** — possible **o. f.** of **ذَيْتٌ** — its **rel. n.**
 — (3) **س**, in (a) **طَسْتُ** — said by Fr to be
 a **dial. var.** — its **ت** why not original — regarded
 by IH as sole instance of unincorporative sub-
 stitution for **س** — (b) **سِت** — its formation —

PAGE.

(c) ^٥لُصِتْ and ^٥اَكْبَاتْ — (4) ^٥ص in ^٥لُصِتْ — its *pl.* — and derivation — said by Fr to be a *dial. var.* — vowel of its ^٥ل — (5) ^٥ب in ^٥ذَعَالَتْ and ^٥ذَعَالَتْ — *dial. vars.* or cases of substitution — meaning of ^٥ذَعَالِبْ and ^٥ذَعَالِبْ — *sing.* of latter — ^٥ذَعَالِبْ *orig.* ^٥ذَعَالِبْ — substitution in ^٥ذَعَالَتْ and ^٥لُصِتْ weak — (6) ^٥ط in ^٥فَسَكَاطْ — (7) ^٥د in ^٥تَبَيُّوتْ — seldom substituted for ^٥ — *ex.* — ^٥رَحْمَتْ, ^٥جَنَّتْ, and ^٥نَعَمَتْ.

§. 690. ^٥ substituted for six letters, (1) Hamza, (a) ^٥aug., in (a) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — ^٥ in ^٥اَهَرَقَتْ — (b) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (c) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (d) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — *aors.* — all four *exs.* transmitted by ISk — (b) *rad.*, in (a) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — or ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (b) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — Hamza here why altered into ^٥ — (c) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (d) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (e) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — (f) ^٥هَرَقَتْ — Hamza in these cases why changed into ^٥ — substitution of ^٥ for Hamza confined to hearsay — (2) ^٥ا, in (a) ^٥اَنَ — opinions on its ^٥ — (b) ^٥اَنَ — opinions on its last ^٥ — (c) ^٥اَنَ and ^٥اَنَ i. q. ^٥اَنَ or ^٥اَنَ — opinions on its ^٥ in former case —

1356—1366

(d) هَـ — dispute about its last ʾ — opinion of BB — of Z and IH — of AZ, Akh, and KK — of others — substitution of ʾ for ʾ anomalous — (3)

و , in هَـ — dispute as to whether its last ʾ be substituted for و , or for ʾ converted from و , — meaning of ʾ here — (4) ي , in (a) هَـ for هَـ — its last ʾ a *subst.* for ي in pause — or in pause and continuity alike — such substitution not regular — subsidiary to introduction of *conj.* ي in continuity — *conj.* ي elided in pause — last ʾ of هَـ quiescent in pause, rarely in continuity — mostly pronounced with Kasr in continuity, with or without *conj.* ي — proof that ʾ is not for feminization — (b) هَـ — (5) ت , in (a) هَـ , هَـ , هَـ , etc., in pause — continuity sometimes treated like pause, and pause like continuity — (b) هَـ and هَـ — (c) هَـ — regarded by many as a *dial. var.* — measure of هَـ — like that of هَـ — its *o. f.* — measure of هَـ — (d) هَـ — (e) هَـ — (6) ح , in (a) هَـ — (b) هَـ — (c) هَـ — distinguished by some from هَـ .

§. 691. ل substituted for two letters, (1) ل — 1367—1369
— ل *dim. of* ل — or a *sing. n. peculiar*

	PAGE.
to the <i>dim.</i> —effect of <i>dim.</i> formation on its sense— ^{اَصْلًا} and ^{اَق} diptote when used as names—(2) ^{اَلطَّيِّع} — ^ض —alternative forms.	
§. 692. ط substituted for two letters, (1) ت , (a) regularly in ^{اَفْعَل} after a letter of covering—reason of substitution—(b) anomalously in attached <i>nom. pron.</i> of every <i>pret. v.</i> of 1st or 2nd <i>pers.</i> after a letter of covering—in <i>dial.</i> of Banū Tamīm— ^ل of <i>v.</i> , if ط , then incorporated into ط of <i>pron.</i> —substitution why anomalous—(2) د — ^{مَ} and ^{مَط} .	1369—1370
§. 693. ذ substituted for three letters, (1) ت in (a) ^{اَفْعَل} , (a) regularly after د , ذ , or ز — ذ and mostly ذ then incorporated into it—causes of conversion and incorporation—incorporative conversion not relevant here—after ذ conversion necessary, and incorporation usual—(b) anomalously after ج —conversion why anomalous— <i>exs.</i> —confined to hearsay—(b) some anomalous formations, (a) ^{قَزْد} and ^{جَد} —(b) ^{دَوْلَج} —reason for supposing its د to be a <i>subst.</i> for ت —this substitution not to be copied—contrasted with cases (a, a) and	1370—1374

	PAGE.
(a, b)—(2) ط — مَرَدِي — meanings of أَلَدَكُ — ذ (3) — مَرَطِي , etc.	
§. 694. ج substituted for ی when (1) double, (a) in pause—cause of substitution—and of its employment in pause—(b) in continuity when treated like pause—(2) single, (a) in pause— dialectic peculiarity—object of substitution— (b) not in pause— اَمَسَجَت and اَمَسَج for اَمَسِي and اَمَسَت —vocalization of ج —sub- stitution more anomalous here than in cases (1, a), (1, b), and (2, a)— ج in اَمَسَج possibly a subst. for ا of اَمَسِي — عَجَمَجَة of Kudā'a.	1374—1378
§. 695. ص substituted for س before غ , خ , ق , and ط —substitution how accounted for—similar to Imāla—not allowable after these letters — but not prevented by separation from them— regular, but not necessary — زَقَر — زَرَاط .	1378—1381
§. 696. ز substituted for two letters, س and ص , when quiescent before د —(1) for س — سَدَل and سَدَر of what conjugs.—cause of substitution— simulation not allowable here—(2) for ص — quiescent ص , before د , pronounceable (1) as pure ز — cause of change—(2) as ص simulating	1381—1389

sound of *z*—simulation why not allowable in *س*—*ess.*—meaning of IH's words on this subject—mobile *ص* before *د* not changed into pure *z*—but sometimes made to simulate *z*—though more rarely than quiescent *ص*—conversion into *z* allowable only when heard—simulation similarly restricted in *ص* separated from *د* by more than a vowel—mobile *س* converted into *z* before *ق* in *dial.* of Kalb—simulation by *ج* and *ش*—its cause—its rarity disputed—meaning put by Jr̄b upon "simulation" in case of *ج* and *ش*—these two letters not made into pure *z*—summary of previous discussion—(3) as pure *ص*—simulation more frequent than substitution, and sounding plain than both—meaning of "sounding plain"—comparative frequency of such pronunciations as are allowable in quiescent *ص*—and in quiescent *س*—end of what Z, IH, and IM mention in this chapter.

- §. 696A. Substitution of other letters—of all letters in order of outlets—(1) Hamza—(2) *ا*—(3) *ه*—(4) *ع* for two letters, *ح* and Hamza—(5) *غ* for two letters, *خ* and *ع*—(6) *ح* for *ع*—(7) *خ* for *ع*—reciprocity between them—(8) *ق* for *ك*—(9) *ك* for two letters, (a) *ق*—reciprocity between them—(b) *ت*—(10) *ج*—(11) *ش* for three letters, (a) *ك*—(b) *ج*—observation by IU—(c) *س*—(12) *ي*—(13) *ض*

1389—1395

for ل — ص wrongly put here, instead of ض ,
 by some MSS— جَصَدٌ , not جَصَدٌ , given by
 lexicologists for جَلَدٌ —(14) ل —(15) , for
 ت —(19) د —(18) ط —(17) ن —(16) ل
 —(20) ص —(21) ز —(22) س for three letters,
 (a) اِسْتَخَذَ — adduced by Z as evidence
 that س is a letter of substitution—(b) ش —
 (c) ل —(23) ظ —no instance of its unincor-
 porative substitution—(24) ذ for two letters,
 د and ث —س, ذ, and ظ not reckoned by IH
 among letters of substitution—(25) ث for two
 letters, ف and ذ —(26) ف for two letters,
 (a) ث —(b) ب —(27) ب for two letters,
 د —(29) م —(28) ف and م .

CHAPTER X.—TRANSFORMATION OF THE UN SOUND.

- §. 697. Unsoundness—transformation—definition of it
 as a technical term—alleviation of Hamza and
 some cases of substitution excluded—degrees of
 dissimilarity between these two processes and
 transformation—alteration of Hamza not a
 transformation—nor substitution, elision, or
 quiescence, of sound letters other than Hamza
 —nor inflectional alteration of unsound letters
 —three modes of transformation—(1) conver-
 sion—(2) elision—(a) regular—(b) euphonic

1396—1407

—(c) curtailing or arbitrary—(3) transfer of vowel—subsequent treatment of unsound letter—transfer subsidiary to quiescence—letters of transformation—also named “unsound letters”—Hamza included by some—|, ʔ, and ʕ why subject to alteration—vowels really parts of them—consonant when termed “mobile” or “quiescent”—vowel of mobile consonant pronounced after, not with, it—impletion of vowel into letter of prolongation—number and description of vowels—|, ʔ, and ʕ found in *ns.*, *vs.*, and *ps.*—| not *rad.* in *decl. ns.* or in *vs.*—*rad.* in *ps.*, *uninfl. ns.*, imitative *ejs.*, and foreign names—formations sound or unsound—*quad. n.* or *v.*—*quin.*—condition of reduplication in *quad.*—definition of unsound formation—its unsound constituent—Hamza not technically termed “unsound”—formations divisible into (1) formed, and not formed, with Hamza—both being sound and unsound—(2) reduplicated and unreduplicated—both being sound and unsound—these two divisions omitted by *IH*—reduplicated also formed, and not formed, with Hamza—definition of “formed with Hamza”—and of “reduplicated”—such formations as قَلَق not named “reduplicated”—seven divisions of unsound formations—their names.

- §. 698. Positions of unsound letters—ا—و and ی—
 agreement between *unaug.* و and ی in (1)
 occurrence of either as (a) ف—(b) ع—(c)
 ل—(d) ع and ل—double و or ی as rare here
 as double guttural—double Hamza not used—
 double & extraordinary—(2) precedence of
 either before the other as ف and ع respectively
 —precedence of و more frequent—only instan-
 ces of either—difference between them in (1)
 precedence of و before ی as ف or ع and ل
 respectively—converse precedence not found—
 و and ی as ع and ل, respectively, more fre-
 quent than double و, in حَوَّان and حَوَّوْ
 held by S to be a *subst.* for second ی—first ی
 in حَوَّان why not converted into ا—or incor-
 porated into second—و in حَوَّان held by Mz
 to be original—opinion of S correct—his re-
 marks on حَوَّوْ—و why substituted for its last ی
 —(2) occurrence of ی as (a) ف and ع—
 ل like كَوَّكَب and دَدَن—(b) ف and ل—
 يَد and يَت—و not so used in either case,
 except in (a) اَدَل—opinion of R—homogeneity
 of ف and ع rare—less disagreeable with separa-
 tion or incorporation—(b) و—its *o. f.*—its
 component letters—reasons for considering its
 ع ا و—its *dim.*—ع ا و more often than ا ی

الْوَفَى rejected—وَوَيْتُ or أَوَيْتُ—
 —similarity of ف and ل rare in
 tril.—(3) occurrence of ي as ف, ع, and
 ل, contrary to , with possible exception. of اَر
 —o. f. of يَا—and of بَا, تَا, etc.—their
 orig. a ي—but, according to F, a , —ا of
 دَال, ذَال, etc.—ع of حَم, عَم, etc.—
 measure of حَم.

PAGE.

THE , AND ي AS ف S.

§. 699. , (1) retained unaltered—why so treated—وَجَّهَ

1416—1431

(2) elided in (a) *aors.*—o. f. of يَزُن and يَزَن
 —their , why elided—elision desirable for
 alleviation—their ي why not elided—or their
 Kasra—, of يَزَع why not elided—theory of
 KK on reason for elision—, retained if letter
 after it be pronounced with Fath—يَقَع—
 يَجَد—يَذَر—يَطَأ and يَسَع—يَدَع and يَضَع
 —elision extended to remaining variations of
aor., and to *imp.*—(b) *inf. ns.*—o. f. of عَدَّة
 said to be (a) عَدَّة—its , why elided—two
 qualifications necessary for elision—one not
 sufficient—no elision in simple substantive—

transfer of vowel the intended mode of transformation in *inf. n.*, and elision merely consequential—or elision intended, and transfer subsidiary—(b) ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ in ^{٩٠}عَدَ a compensation for elided , —in ^{٩٠}عَدَ and ^{٩٠}عَدَ why combined with , —elision of ^{٩٠}عَدَ —(c) ^{٩٠}عَدَ —its ^{٩٠}عَدَ why pronounced with Kasr in ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ and ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ and ^{٩٠}عَدَ or ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ and ^{٩٠}عَدَ — ^{٩٠}عَدَ —(3) converted — ^{٩٠}عَدَ like , , except in elision—not elided in *aor.* — *ezs.*—why not elided—^{٩٠}عَدَ and ^{٩٠}عَدَ —only instances of elision—conversion of ^{٩٠}عَدَ — , converted into Hamza, (1) necessarily, when initial and followed by a mobile , —or rather by a , not a letter of prolongation converted from an *aug.*—conversion of first necessary if second be (a) not a letter of prolongation—(b) a letter of prolongation unconverted, or converted from a *rad.*—opinion of KK on ^{٩٠}عَدَ —dispute as to necessity for conversion when second is alleviated form of Hamza—(c) original—discussion of condition that second be mobile—conclusions based on it—first , why not converted into ^{٩٠}عَدَ —(2) allowably in such as ^{٩٠}عَدَ

and اَدْرِى , and, according to Mz, اَشَاحْ — (3) invariably in اَوَّلَى — (4) irregularly in اَنَاة , اَحَد , etc. — اَخَذَ — اَسَاءَ — rarity of initial ى pronounced with Kasr—initial , sometimes converted into ت — substitution of ت for , not regular, except in اِفْتَعَلَ and ى in اِفْتَعَلَ regularly converted into ت , when not converted from Hamza—conversion of quiescent , and ى into ى and , respectively.

- §. 700. Fatha of ع original in يَوْحَلْ and يَوْجَعْ , but 1432—1433
adventitious in يَضَعْ and يَسَعْ — antagonism of these two Fathas—latter likened to Kasra in تَجَارِ — this Kasra adventitious—تَجَارِ therefore not diptote—former likened to Kasra in تَجَارِبْ .

- §. 701. Conversion of , or ى into | in aor. of اِفْتَعَلَ — 1433—1437
اِيتَعَدَ and اِيتَسَّرَ and their variations—this mode of conjugating universal among some Hijāzīs—and practised by Shf—يَاجَلْ , يَفْعَلْ , and يَجْعَلْ — four dial. vars. in اِفْتَعَلَ aor. of فَعَلَ whose ف is a , — three anomalous, and one chaste—Kasra in يَجْعَلْ distinguished from Kasra in نَعْلَمْ and نَعْلَمْ — يَجْعَلْ

	PAGE.
peculiar to <i>dial.</i> of Banū Asad— <i>imp.</i> of رَجُلٌ —indication that conversion of ر in رَجُلٌ and رَجُلٌ into ا or ا is regular—language of Sf, F, and others—of IH—يَا بُسْ and يَا نُسْ — this conversion of ا into ا found only in <i>aor.</i> whose ع is pronounced with Fath, and said by S not to be regular— <i>aoristic</i> ا not pro- nounced with Kasr here.	
§. 702. Substitution of ا for ف of اِفْعَلٌ when a Hamza—this ا not converted into ت — اِيقْزَرُ — اِيقْزَرُ wrong—اِتَّكَلْ and اِتُّمِنْ anomalous or rare—ا in <i>act.</i> , or و in <i>pass.</i> , not changed into ت in chaste <i>dial.</i> —اِتَّخَذَ not from اَخَذَ —but from اِتَّخَذَ —so said by F—existence of اِتَّخَذَ contested by Zj—F's opinion verified— or from اَخَذَ —this derivation better—some Bdd reported to allow conversion of ا into ت — اِتُّمِنْ wrong—اِيقْزَرُ and اِيقْزَرُ vulgar.	1437—1440
—	
THE و AND ا AS ع S.	
§. 703. Transformed, elided, or preserved—transfor- mation—three modes of transformation in ع — (1) conversion—into ا —precluded in	1441—1466

^و and ^و , and in ^و and ^و —
 reasons for conversion into | —its cause not
 very substantial—operative only on ل or
 ع , and easily restrained from action—prin-
 cipally effective in *v.*—this transformation ori-
 ginal in *pret. act.* of unangmented *tril.*—and
 conformable to original in *aor.*, *act.* or *pass.*, of
 unangmented *tril.*, and in *pret. act.*, and *aor.*
pass., of two augmented *trils.*, ^و and ^و |
 —but not found in *aor.* whose ع is *orig.* pro-
 nounced with Damm or Kasr—classification of
ns. subjected to this transformation—conver-
 sion into | found in (a) *tril. n.*—(b) *v.* (a)
tril.—(b) conformable to *tril.*—^و | —
^و , ^و , and ^و —(c) *n.* conformable
 to (b, a) or (b, b)—contrary to (a) ^و and
^و — ^و and ^و anomalous—or ^و
 regular, but weak—^و and ^و —
^و and ^و —conditions of conversion in two
 last—^و and ^و — (b) ^و —
^و , ^و and ^و , ^و and ^و ,
^و and ^و —these formations disqualified for
 conversion of ع into | —contrary to ^و and

بَايَعٌ —and to أَقَامَ and اِسْتَقَامَ —qualification
 needed for such transformation in *deriv.*—
 additional disability in تَقَوْمَ , بَيْنَ and تَوْمَ and
 تَبِينَ —omission of conversion anomalous—its
 anomalousness disputed in اِنْعَلَّ and اِسْتَفْعَلَّ
 when they have no *tril. v.*—transformation also
 heard in most of these anomalies—(2) quies-
 cence by transfer of vowel—reason for such
 transformation—this quiescence principally in
v.—in unaugmented *tril.*—and augmented—
 treatment of ي and ي after transfer of vowel—
 nature and extent of alteration—يَبِيعُ and يَقُومُ
 why not transformed in same way as their
pret.—مَفْعُولٌ , مَفْعِلٌ , and مَفْعُولٌ similar—
 classification of *ns.* conformable to *v.* in this
 respect—transfer adopted for observance of
 mode of formation—by mobilization of quies-
 cent ف with vowel of ع —يَطْلُبُ —other *exs.*
 —confusion between *cats.* of ي and ي not
 heeded here—conditions of transfer—another
 added in Tashil—(3) elision, (a) necessary,
 (a) where quiescence of final is necessitated,
 by (α) attachment of *pron.*—vowel of initial—
 اَلَيْسَ —اَلَيْسَ —(β) apocopation or quasi-
 apocopation—(b) in such as اِقَامَةً and اِسْتَقَامَةً
 —dispute as to ا elided here—this mention of

قَامَ and سَتَامَ not a superfluous repetition—

(b) allowable in such as (a) سِيد and مَيْت —

(b) كَهْنُونَة and قَبْلُولَة —elision necessary in latter *cat.*—nature of alteration in it disputed—opinion of S on both *cats.*—theory that former is *orig.* فَعِيل —refuted by S—or that former is

orig. فَعِيل —transformation of فَعِيل into فَعِيل being regular in assimilate *ep.*—and latter *orig.* فَعِيلَة —and فَعِيلَة *orig.* فَعِيل —opinion of S preferable—elision why necessary in latter *cat.*—

(c) rare in فَعِيلَان —preservation of و and ي —reasons for it in such as (1) حَوْنِي and صَوْرِي —

(2) حَوْنَان , جَوْنَان , حَمَكَان , and مَوْتَان —additional reason in latter *cat.*—(3) قَوْبَاء and خَيْبَاء .

§. 704. *Tril. vs.* whose ع is unsound —تَو —formations

1466—1469

of *vs.* in *cats.* of و and ي —no يَفْعَل in *cat.* of

و , nor يَفْعَل in *cat.* of ي —يَطْيِيع and يَتَيَم —

said to be (1) يَفْعَل from (a) فَعَل in *cat.* of و

—their *pret.*—and *o. f.*—(b) فَعَل in *cat.* of

(a) ي —(b) و , anomalously—(2) intermixtures of two *dial. vars.*—refutation of (2)—

and of (1, b, b,) —تَو .

	PAGE.
§. 705. Transmutation of فَعَلَ, when its ع is ي or ي , into فَعِل on attachment of mobile <i>nom. pron.</i> — قَام and قَال not <i>orig.</i> فَعَلَ—but فَعَلَ—dispute on manner of transition from فَعَلْتُ to فَعِلْتُ—theory (1) of many that فَعَلَ is transmuted into فَعِل—this opinion adopted by Z and IM—(2) of IH that Damm and Kasr are for explanation of the <i>v.</i> as a scion of ي and ي respectively—meaning of “scion”—his argument—reason given by earlier authorities for suggesting transmutation—his argument in reply—(3) of R—alleged transmutation of بَاع and قَام into بَاع and قَوْم—كَيْد and زَيْل—no transmutation without mobile <i>nom. pron.</i> , except in كَيْد and زَيْل—explanation of these two.	1469—1476
§. 706. Vocalization of letter preceding unsound ع in <i>pass.</i> of <i>pret.</i> , <i>tril.</i> or on measure of فَعَلْ or فَعَلْ— <i>dial. vars.</i> in <i>cat.</i> of (1) قِيل and بَاع—(a) pure ي—evolution of بَاع—and قِيل—opinion of S in §. 710 strengthened—(b) Ishmām—this <i>dial. var.</i> chaste—(c) pure ي—evolution of قَوْل—and بَوَع—opinion of Akh in §. 710 strengthened—this <i>dial. var.</i> of	1476—1484

no account—fuller explanations—pure *ي* and , explained by IH—and by Jz—latter explanation more probable— Ishmām — different from Iahmām in pause—how pronounced—its essence—so understood by Fr and GG—said by some to be like Ishmām in pause—how described by others—really Raum—its object —(2) *بَعَتْ* and *ذَلَّتْ* —vocalization of their *ف* —ambiguous forms avoided—and replaced by unambiguous—but not disallowed by Westerns—nor noticed by S—ambiguity disregarded by him—and pardoned by Sf—possible meaning of “avoided”—avoidance preferable—but not necessary with distinctive context—(3) *إِنْتَيْدَ* and *إِخْتَبَرْ* —vocalization of their *conj.* Hamza.

- §. 707. *أَفْعَلْ* sounded true in (1) v. of wonder—(2) *أَفْعَلْ* of superiority—two causes assigned by IH—only second by S—no reason for first—(3) —(4) *إِخْتَبَرْ* and *إِرْتَادَ* — *تَفَاعَلَ* i. q. *فَتَعَلَّ* —(5) *أَفْعَلْ* —no reason for assigning any cause—distinction between *أَفْعَلْ* and *أَفْعَلْ* —(6) such *vs.* as *صَهَدَ* and *سَوَدَ* — *لَيْسَ* —its *orig.* pronounced with Kasr —(7) variations of *vs.* whose *ع* is sounded

1484—1490

true—ع sometimes (1) transformed in فَعَلَ
denoting defects—and in its *derivs.*—(2)
anomalously sounded true in أَفْعَلْ and اسْتَفْعَلَ
—to notify o. f. of *conjug.*

- §. 708. Additional cause requisite for conversion of , 1490—1498
or ى into | in penultimate after *aug.* | —
nature of such cause—no conversion in ante-
penultimate—Hamza in رَدَّآءُ and كَسَّآءُ , قَائِلٌ
and كَبَّآءُ , عَجَّآءُ , بَوَّآءُ and أَدَّآءُ , بَآءُ
—why substituted for | —first | why not
elided—Hamza in رَسَّآءُ , — , ى , in *act.*
part. of unaugmented *tril.*, said to be converted
into Hamza when transformed in *v.*—really
converted into | , and from | into Hamza—
elision of ع impossible—cause of its conversion
into | —and from | into Hamza—this Hamza
written as undotted ى — ع sounded true in
act. part. when so sounded in *v.*—ع and ل
sometimes transposed in *act. part.* of hollow
v.—and always by Khl when its ل is Hamza
—his argument—similar transposition by him
in مَطَّآءُ and خَطَّآءُ , شَوَّآءُ and جَوَّآءُ —answer
to his argument—شَاكٌ and لَاشٌ —
anomalous—its derivation—and forms—شَاكٌ ,

	PAGE.
هَ، etc., said to be (1) فَعْلٌ, (a) abbreviated from فاعِلٌ —(b) intensive form of فاعِلٌ —(2) فاعِلٌ by elision of (a) its ع —whether as , or or Hamza—their measure in this case —(b) its aug. —their measure in this case —A's procedure—جَاءَ —ع of فاعِلٌ sounded true.	
§. 709. <i>Pass. part. of tril. v. whose ع is unsound—</i> evolution of مَبْعُ and مَقُولٌ —why not مَبْعُوعٌ —dispute between S and Akh on letter elided—each disputant contravening a rule of his own—argument in support of each—effect of dispute on measure of مَبْعُونٌ —and on alleviation of مَبْعُونٌ —anomalies in <i>cat.</i> of , —and of ي —<i>cat.</i> of ي treated as sound by Banū Tamīm—<i>exs.</i> in poetry—مَبْعُونٌ and مَبْعُونٌ anomalous according to H—his opinion controverted—مَبْعُونٌ said—and مَبْعُونٌ —complete form allowed by Mb as a poetic license—but regarded by A as a Tamīmī <i>dial. var.</i>—opinion of ISh on <i>pass. part.</i> in <i>cat.</i> of ي —and of , —<i>pass. part.</i> in latter <i>cat.</i> sometimes treated as sound—such treatment regularly allowed by Mb—but not by A.	1498—1505

	PAGE.
§. 710. Opinion of S on treatment of ع when a quiescent ع preceded by Damma—and of Akh—reason for treatment advocated by S—and by Akh—reply to letter— <i>exs.</i> —measure of قِيل and دِيك—and of مَعِشَة—Akh's rule (1) contravened by himself in <i>pass. part.</i> —measure of مَبِيع — تَبِيع or تَبَّع — (2) inconsistent with hearsay—مَضْرُوبَة—its measure and derivation—مُضَايِقَة and مُضَانَة .	1506—1509
§. 711. Transformation a property of <i>vs.</i> —imparted to <i>ns.</i> only by conformity to <i>vs.</i> —unaugmented <i>tril. n.</i> (1) transformed when modelled on <i>v.</i> , i. e. when on measure of فَعَل or فَعِل —conversion of ع necessary here—but sometimes omitted—such forms anomalous—no فَعَل in hollow <i>n.</i> —(2) treated as sound when not modelled on <i>v.</i> —قَدِم —transformability of <i>inf. n.</i> determined by that of <i>v.</i> —treatment of فَعَل .	1509—1513
§. 712. Condition of transformation in augmented <i>tril. n.</i> not conformable to <i>v.</i> —difference from <i>v.</i> not prescribed in unaugmented <i>tril.</i> —why prescribed in augmented, and not in unaugmented—meaning of “conformable”—	1513—1525

applicability of condition to *ns.* hitherto mentioned—nature of prescribed difference—peculiar difference in ^٠قَاتِم and ^٠بَاتِع —*exs.* of augmented *tril.* with, and without, prescribed difference—rule as stated by A—two sorts of *n.* covered by it—(1) ^٠مَقَام — ^٠مَقِيم and ^٠مَبِين — ^٠مَفْعَلَة from ^٠بَع — § of feminization no obstacle to agreement with *v.* in measure —anomalies—their object—^٠مَرِيَم and ^٠مَدِين —(2) ^٠نَبِيْع or ^٠نَبِيْع — ^٠نَقِيْل and ^٠نَبِيْع —this sort of *n.* how distinguishable from *v.*—another condition prescribed by Mb—^٠مَرِيَم and ^٠مَدِين , and ^٠نَقِيْل and ^٠نَبِيْع —*n.* resembling, or differing from, *aor.* in both measure and augment—first sort like ^٠أَسْوَد and ^٠أَبْيَض — ^٠أَدْوَر — ^٠أَبْيَع , ^٠أَبْع , and ^٠أَدْوَن — ^٠أَهْوَنَاء — ^٠أَعْيَنَة and ^٠أَخْوَنَة — ^٠أَعْيَن and ^٠أَبْيَنَاء —transfer here anomalous—^٠أَبَان — ^٠بَرِيْد —second sort like ^٠مَخْطُوط —this the obvious conclusion, according to A —opinion of IM and his son—objection to it —their reasoning applicable only to particular *dial.*—second sort how indicated by IM—opinion of Khl—A's conclusion shared

	PAGE.
by many etymologists— جَدُولٌ , خُرُوعٌ , and عَلَبٌ .	
§. 713. Non-final mobile , and ى * generally imper- vious to conversion, by preceding Kasra and Damma, into ى and , respectively— and still stronger when doubled— , some- times so converted for conformity—but not ى —such conversion found in (1) the <i>inf. n.</i> whose ع is transformed in the <i>v.</i> —though not necessarily in this way—عَدَّ with contrasted with طَيَّرَ with حَوْلَ — and لَوَّكَ with حَوْلَ — طَيَّرَ with قَوَّامَ — and قَوَّامَ with قَوَّامَ — (2) the <i>pl.</i> whose ع is transformed in the <i>sing.</i> — ى of قَيَّرَ — and of قَيَّرَ — طَيَّرَ — نَوَّأَ and نَوَّأَ — (3) the <i>pl.</i> whose ع is quiescent in the <i>sing.</i> , and followed by in the <i>pl.</i> —عَوَّدَ and كَوَّدَ — قَوَّامَ anomalous— needed here—effective as element in cause of conversion—and powerful as auxiliary in (1) and (2)—قَوَّامَ allowable for conformity—خَوَّانَ and صَوَّانَ — قَوَّامَ said to be contracted from قَوَّامَ .	1525—1530

	PAGE.
§. 714. Augmented <i>tril. ns.</i> , when not like قَامَةً and سَقَامَةً, debarred from transformation by quiescent before, or after, its ي or ي —such <i>ns.</i> of three kinds—reason for absence of transformation in (1) these <i>ns.</i> generally— (2) أَبِينَاءٌ and أَبِينَاءٌ — أَبِينَاءٌ and أَبِينَاءٌ sometimes said—قَامَةً and سَقَامَةً why transformed—(3) نَوَالٌ and سَمَالٌ, طَوِيلٌ, غُدُورٌ and تَوَرُّلٌ, تَقَوَالٌ and تَسْيَارٌ —ambiguity alleged as reason in تَقَوَالٌ and تَسْيَارٌ —nature of this ambiguity—true reason—(4) مَقَوَالٌ and مَخِيَطٌ —(5) مَقَوَلٌ and مَخِيَطٌ —cause of transformation present here —excuse for non-transformation—(6) مَقُومٌ and مَبِيعٌ so far as regards conversion of their ع into ا — (7) جَوَادٌ, طَوِيلٌ, and غُدُورٌ —true reason.	1530—1537
§. 715. Second of two unsound letters enclosing ا of ultimate <i>pl.</i> is converted into ا —and this ا into Hamza—ضَمَانٌ anomalous, like ضَمُونٌ —such conformity of <i>pl.</i> to <i>sing.</i> not universal—nor ضَمَانٌ to be taken as a precedent—conversion actually heard only	1537—1542

in case of two , s as enclosing letters—but extended by Khl and S to case of two ی s or of , and ی —this extension disallowed by Akh—*pls.* of *act. part.* from حَيِّ and شَوِّ —reason for Akh's doubt—sound opinion that of S—further authority for it—second unsound letter not converted when far from end—عَيَّالِيلُ and عَوَّارِرُ —so مَمَّ and نِهَامَ and صَيَّايَةَ —قَوَّامَ and صَوَّامَ , but قَمَّ anomalous—similar conflict of opinion on conversion of second of two unsound letters enclosing antepenultimate | in *non-pl.*

- §. 716. Treatment of , and ی combined, when their first is quiescent—cause of incorporation— , and ی treated as likes—incorporation encouraged by quiescence of their first— , converted, whether first or second—no incorporation in (1) تَبَوِّيعَ and سَوِّيرَ —nor in أَجْلِيوَانٌ and دِيوَانٌ (2)—تَقْوِلَ and قَوْلَ —measure of دِيوَانٌ (3)—رَوِيَّةٌ and رَوِيَاً —conversion and incorporation sometimes found in (3)—never allowable in (1)—قَيَّ , حَوَِّّةٌ , مَمَّوْنٌ —قَيَّ and نَهَرٌ —dispute about , of حَوَِّّةٌ —preceding Damma changed into

1542—1548

	PAGE.
Kasra—either vowel allowable in ^س <i>pl.</i> of ^ا <i>كُوفِي</i> —and in some other forms—conversion (1) in ^ا <i>مِ</i> and ^ا <i>مِ</i> anomalous—for want of <i>ي</i> in their <i>o. f.</i> —or of finality in their double <i>و</i> —reason of its conversion—(2) in ^ا <i>نِ</i> more anomalous.	
§. 717. Treatment of <i>و</i> and <i>ي</i> after <i>ل</i> of ultimate <i>pl.</i> not preceded by <i>و</i> or <i>ي</i> — <i>مَعَايِشُ</i> — <i>مَنَايِشُ</i> — <i>مَصَائِبُ</i> —opinion of S on last—of Jh—regular form—of Zj—of IH—confirmation of his opinion—Hamza in all three <i>pls.</i> anomalous.	1548—1551
§. 718. <i>ي</i> , when <i>ع</i> of <i>فُعَلِي</i> , (1) converted into <i>و</i> in substantive— <i>طُوبَى</i> —virtually, when not actually, a substantive— <i>كُوسَى</i> and <i>طُوبَى</i> treated as substantives— <i>فُعَلِي</i> anarthrous not a <i>qual.</i> —but treated as a substantive—small sense of qualification in <i>أَفْعَلُ</i> of superiority—(2) not converted in <i>ep.</i> —but Damma before it converted into Kasra—so in <i>pl.</i> <i>فُعَلُ</i> — <i>بُحُصُ</i> —its Damma converted into Kasra—but sometimes left, and <i>ي</i> then converted into <i>و</i> .	1552—1554

restored و and ی not reconverted into | —
 (b) for conformity—restoration of ل to its
 place— ی then not converted into | in
 رَضِينَ and رَضِينَ —elision of ی in *sing.*
masc. after Kasra or Fatha— و and ی in
 رَضُونَ and رَضِينَ not converted—but ی
 sometimes elided—in absence of ambiguity,
 | not restored [to its *o. f.*] for avoidance of
 elision on account of two quiescents—(2)
 made quiescent—يَرْمِي — يَغْزِر
 الرَّمِي (nom.)—similarly الرَّمِي (gen.)
 and الرَّمِي —(3) elided—sometimes arbitra-
 rily—from frequency of usage— ل not
 elided in أَخْت —(4) preserved.

§. 720. Capacity of و and ی for bearing inflectional
 vowels after (1) a quiescent—(2) a mobile
 —meaning of “mobile”—kind of vowel
 found before each— و and ی sometimes
 quiescent in *subj.* and *acc.*—explanations of
 أَنْ تَكُونُ —such quiescence found in *proso*—
 و and ی quiescent in *ind.* and *nom.*— ی
 sometimes mobile—catalogue of anomalies
 in treatment of unsound letter as seat of

1568—1577

	PAGE.
inflection—, not found in <i>gen.</i> —predicament of <i>ی</i> —sometimes mobile—this pronunciation said to be a poetic license—opinion of R—, and <i>ی</i> elided in <i>apoc.</i> —sometimes retained— <i>ی</i> retained, except in <i>apoc.</i> —and sometimes even there.	
§. 721. No <i>decl. n.</i> ending in , preceded by a vowel—cause of that—treatment of , when a <i>ل</i> , final or virtually final, after original <i>Damma</i> , in <i>decl. n.—exs.</i> —, converted into <i>ی</i> , and then <i>Damma</i> into <i>Kasra</i> —, not so converted when (1) not a <i>ل</i> — <i>تَهْلَ</i> —(2) followed by inseparable termination—exception when preceding <i>Damma</i> is upon another, —(3) after accidental <i>Damma</i> —(4) in a <i>v.</i> —(5) in a <i>n.</i> , but invariably pronounced with <i>Fath</i> — <i>هو</i> sole instance—reasons for retention of , here—corresponding predicament of <i>ی</i> after <i>Damma</i> as respects conversion of <i>Damma</i> into <i>Kasra</i> —Fr and Sf on <i>سُورَا</i> —instances of non-finality as preventive of conversion—analogous instances in other <i>cats.</i> —Khl on differentiation of <i>مَلَا</i> and <i>عَبَا</i> from <i>مَلَا</i> and <i>عَبَا</i> .	1577—1583

	PAGE.
§. 722. Similar treatment of final , after Damma, in spite of intervening letter of prolongation, in فَعُولٌ —this , converted into ي —and then preceding , —and Damma of ع into Kasra—this process invariable in <i>pl.</i> , but not in <i>sing.</i> — <i>exs.</i> of conversion and non-conversion in <i>sing.</i> —S on proper letter in <i>sing.</i> and <i>pl.</i> —final , strong when doubled—conversion then necessary, proper, or improper— , not converted if not final—extraordinary cases of conversion— مَعْنَى or مَعْدُو —cause of transformation in former—similar transformation in <i>pass. part.</i> whose ل is Hamza— فَعُولٌ —vowel of ف in فَعُولٌ after conversion of , and Damma— صَمِيمٌ and تَيْلٌ —conversion why allowable here—its regularity disputed— نِيَامٌ anomalous.	1583—1587
§. 723. Final , and ي after <i>aug.</i> converted into , and afterwards into Hamza— رَأَى and تَأَى —cause of conversion into —and then into Hamza—preceding to be <i>aug.</i> —reasons for this—and also, says Mz, third— زَايَةٌ — زَايٌ —coordinated with غَايَةٌ and غَايَةٌ — تَأَى — , and ي not converted before inseparable :	1588—1593

	PAGE
of feminization—inseparable termination a preventive of conversion into ي — <i>exs.</i> — عَظَا or عَظَايَ, عَا or عَايَ, and عَا or عَايَ — و in فَلَنَسُو and عَرَقُوا allowable for same reason as ي here—شَقَا and شَقَا not like عَظَا and عَظَا—inseparable termination not a preventive of conversion of و , when a ل , after Kasra into ي — دِنَا — دِنَا and حَرَبَا .	
§. 724. Conversion of final و after Kasra into ي —its cause—conditions requisite for conversion of mobile و after Kasra into ي — treat- ment of mobile ي after Damma — قَنِيَّة and دِنَا —reason of conversion in them—deriva- tion of قَنِيَّة —of صَبِيَّة and دِنَا —conversion of ي in <i>cat.</i> of دُعَى, دُعَى, and بَقَى into ي —whether this ي be <i>orig.</i> و or not—such conversion peculiar to <i>vs.</i>	1593—1598.
§. 725. ل of ثَعَلَى, (1) when و , preserved—no dis- tinction here between substantive and <i>ep.</i> — cause of non-conversion—(2) if ي , pre- served in <i>ep.</i> , and converted into و , in sub- stantive—substantive why selected for	1598—1604.

transformation—moderation intended—this change made in most cases—alleged exceptions—change of *فعل* into *مفعول* in substantive said by IM here and in CK, agreeably with opinion of most GG, to be regular—but in Tashil to be anomalous—as also in another of his compositions—his admission there as to opinion of most GG—his proof that this change is anomalous—criticism on his proof—*ل* of *فعل*, (1) if *فعل*, preserved—no distinction here between substantive and *ep.*—cause of non-conversion—(2) if *مفعول*, preserved in substantive, and converted into *فعل* in *ep.*—*الْحَلَوَى* — *الْقَصِيَا* or *الْقَصَوَى* — IM's opinion contrary to that of most Etymologists—opinion expressed by R—*الْعَلِيَا*, *الدُّنْيَا*, and *الْقَصِيَا* regarded by S as substantives—inconsistency of IH in treating *الْقَصَوَى* as a substantive, and *الْقَصِيَا* and *الْغَزْدَى* as *eps.*—S on *الْقَصَوَى* —conversion the rule, according to him, in every *فعل* *fem.* of *فعل* whose *ل* is *مفعول* —unless it be [actually used as] an *ep.*—Sf's explanation of his meaning in latter case—*ل* of *فعل*, from

PAGE.

	PAGE.
defective, not converted in substantive or <i>ep.—exs.</i> of it scarce.	
§. 726. <i>Sings.</i> of ultimate <i>pl.</i> ending in ی preceded by Hamza—general rule to alleviate these two letters in ultimate <i>pl.</i> —mode of allevia- tion— ی why converted into ا —and Hamza into ی —Hamza mostly converted into و in <i>du.</i> of حَمْرَاءَ —but not in ultimate <i>pl.</i> — هَدَاوِيْ anomalous—general rule con- travened in (1) شَوَاءَ (2) اَدَاوِيْ and (2) شَوَايَا —but observed in (1) عَقَوِيْ هَدَاوِيْ — بَلَايَا and خَطَايَا (3) سَقَايَا and دَرَايَا exceptional—observations on (1) ا third in all these <i>pls.</i> —(2) Hamza after ا in ا شَوَاءَ — (3) ا second in <i>sings.</i> شَاوِيَّةَ and شَانِيَّةَ —(4) اِدَاوِيَّةَ in و after ا in شَاوِيَّةَ —(5) ا and و in اِدَاوِيَّةَ — (6) ا and Hamza in سَقَايَا —(7) ي and Hamza in خَطَايَا —Khl on خَطِيَّةَ —remark by IH— conversion necessary in Hamza and its Kasra, after ا of ultimate <i>pl.</i> , when that Hamza is adventitious in <i>pl.</i> , and ل of <i>pl.</i> is Hamza, ي, or و —no conversion (1) when Hamza is found in <i>sing.</i> as ع —condition for conversion prescribed by IH—and by	1605—1620

	PAGE.
S, Z, and IHsh—meaning of “adventitious in pl.”— <i>الْمَرَايَا</i> or <i>الْمَرَايِي</i> —(2) when <i>ل</i> is sound—Hamza here included among unsound letters—conflicting opinions on its soundness or unsoundness—formation of (1) <i>خَطَايَا</i> —opinion of S and majority of BB—and of Khl—objection to latter—(2) <i>تَضَايَا</i> —(3) <i>مَطَايَا</i> —(4) <i>هَرَايَا</i> —Jj and ISd on <i>غَدَايَا</i> pl. of <i>غَدَايَة</i> —right view—true explanation of <i>ي</i> in it—their language not justifiable by assuming its sing. to be <i>غَدَايَة</i> —assertion of I Amb—anomalies in this cat.—Akh on <i>هَدَايَا</i> —opinion of KK on measure of all four formations mentioned above—and of BB—latter correct—difference between statement attributed to Khl, and opinion of KK, on measure of <i>خَطَايَا</i> .	
§. 727. Final <i>و</i> , fourth or upwards converted into <i>ي</i> when letter before it is not pronounced with Damm—conditions of conversion when letter before it is pronounced with Fath—two reasons assigned for conversion— <i>تَغَايَات</i> and <i>تَغَايَات</i> —Akh on <i>يَشَايَان</i> —weakness of second reason—object of proviso “when letter before it is not pronounced	1620—1624

	PAGE.
with Damm"—additional proviso requisite—original proviso properly restricted to <i>vs.</i> —amendment of it suggested by R.	
§. 728. ع in <i>cat.</i> of قَوًى and هَوًى treated as sound—reason for not transforming it—and so in <i>cat.</i> of طَوًى and حَيًى —another reason in case of قَوًى , طَوًى , and حَيًى —and in that of هَوًى —and another in that of طَوًى and حَيًى — غَايَةً ع treated as sound in <i>n.</i> also— غَايَةً , etc., anomalous—why so called— آيَةً how explained by Fr—and by Ks—anomalous according to all three accounts—last two explanations applicable to غَايَةً , etc.—incorporation in <i>cat.</i> of حَيًى —more frequent than display— حَيًى and عَيًى —incorporation why more frequent—stipulation that vowel of second unsound letter be inseparable— <i>ers.</i> —not imported on account of adventitious and separable letter, nor inflectional—incorporation or display allowable if vowel be either inseparable, or imported on account of adventitious, but inseparable, letter—incorporation more proper in either case—inseparability why stipulated—vowel of first ي how pronounced in display—	1624—1638

PAGE.

حَيَوَا —Kasr of ف in حَي —reason for Fath
or Kasr—better explanation—assertion
about Kasr in *act.* voice apparently a
blunder—incorporation in *pass. pret.*—not
so frequent as in *act.*—construction of حَيَّ
—Damm or Kasr of its ح —reason for each
vowel—similar vocalization of ف in فَعَلْ —
Sf on لِي for لِيَّ, and حَيَّ for حَيَّ —*du.* and
pl. of أُحَيِّ and أُسْتَحْيِي and of أُحَيِّ —
dial. vars. of أُسْتَحْيِي —and of أُسْتَحْيَا —
exs. of أُسْتَحْيِي, *aor.* يُسْتَحْيِي —*orig.* أُسْتَحْيَا,
aor. يُسْتَحْيِي —حَوِيَّ or حَوِيَّ *pass.* of حَايَا —
أُحَيِّ or حَيَّ not said as *aor.* of حَيَّ or حَيَّ —
incorporation eschewed in *aor. pass.* of حَايَا
and أُسْتَحْيَا —and in *aor. act.*—even in *subj.*—
no incorporation in *ext.* of قَوِيَّ —trans-
formation preferred to incorporation—يَحْيَا
and يَقْوِي.

§. 729. Double , peculiar to فَعَلْ —objection to form-
ing فَعَلْ or فَعَلْ from *cat.* of قَوِيَّ —especially
قَوِيَّتْ —this objection obviated in فَعَلْ

1638—1640

	PAGE.
—double , avoided when ع is <i>orig. mobile</i> — but tolerated with incorporation—in <i>n.</i> , not in <i>v.</i>	
§. 730. <i>Pret.</i> and <i>aor.</i> of (1) اِنْعَال whose ع and ل are , s —(2) اِنْعَل whose ل is , —reasons for not incorporating— <i>inf. n.</i> of اِحْوَاي — اِحْوَاي — اِحْوَاي — اِحْوَاي , <i>aor.</i> يَحْوِي , <i>inf. n.</i> اِحْوَاي — <i>pret.</i> of اِنْعَل and اِنْعَال whose ع and ل are ي s , or whose ل is ي —their <i>aor., act. part., and inf. n.</i> —حَاي , <i>aor.</i> يَحْيِي , <i>inf. n.</i> اِحْيَا .	1640—1645
§. 730A. Additions to this chapter—modes of com- bining (1) two ي s—(2) three ي s—(3) four ي s—all of this the predicament of ي s—(4) two , s—(5) three , s—(6) four , s—God knows best.	1645—1662
CHAPTER XI.—INCORPORATION.	
§. 731. Definition—اِدْغَام—or اِدْغَام—incorporation as defined (1) by IH—why so named—two letters requisite for it—quiescent and mobile —first quiescent, and second mobile—both proceeding from one outlet—without separa- tion—modes of separation—(2) by R—his	1663--1702

objections to IH's conditions "quiescent and mobile"—and "without separation"—incorporation necessary, disallowed, and allowable—intended to lighten concurrence of homogeneous letters—such concurrence of three kinds—(1) first homogeneous letter quiescent, and second mobile—here incorporation necessary—whether in one word or two—(2) first mobile, and second quiescent—here incorporation disallowed—^ق and ^ق لم —(3) both mobile—here incorporation (a) necessary—(b) allowable where homogeneous letters are (a) separate, and preceded by mobile, or by letter of prolongation or softness—first homogeneous made quiescent for incorporation—incorporation when good, and when best—why omissible—display of reduplication better after letter of prolongation than after mobile, and after letter of softness than after letter of prolongation—incorporation why allowable after letter of softness—(b) virtually separate—(c) disallowed, (a) where one homogeneous letter is coordinative, whether in *v.* or *n.*—(b) where incorporation would lead to confusion of paradigms—no such confusion in *vs.*—(c) where homogeneous letters are separate, and first

PAGE.

is preceded by quiescent other than a letter of prolongation or softness—**نَحْنُ نَقْصُ** —**وَلِي يَزِيدَ** and **عَدُو وَلِيد** —incorporation not disallowed if preceding quiescent be a letter of prolongation or softness—incorporation of approximates—incorporation of two kinds—of likes and of approximates, in one word and in two—meaning of “approximates”—incorporation proper to etymology and to Readers, but latter kind ignored here by IM—incorporation of likes, whose first is quiescent and second mobile, necessary on three conditions, that first be no.

(1) a * of silence—**مَالِيَه هَلَك** —(2) a Hamza separated from the **ف** —treatment of two consecutive Hamzas in one word—and in two—(3) a letter of prolongation,

(a) at end of word—**اِخْشَى يَاسِرًا** and **اِخْشَوْا وَاَقْدًا** —(b) substituted, not permanently, for another letter—**اُوب** for **اُوب** —IM’s mention of these conditions—incorporation of likes, both of which are mobile, necessary on eleven conditions, (1) that both be in one word—reduplication extremely heavy—no concurrence of likes in *rad.* of *quad.* or *quin.*—nor in **ف** and **ع**

PAGE.

of *tril.*, except extraordinarily—nor in beginning or middle of augmented *tril. n.* not commensurable with *v.*—concurrence of mobile likes in beginning or middle of augmented *vs.*, and of augmented *ns.* commensurable with *vs.*—whether *trils.*—or *quads.*—treatment of likes in augmented *quad.*—and in augmented *tril.*, (*a*) in beginning (α) of *pret.*—similar treatment of approximates when ف of ^{فَعْل} or ^{فَاعِل} is approximate to its ت—incorporation in *pret.* extended to *aor.*, *imp.*, *inf. n.*, and *act.* and *pass. parts.*—(β) of *aor.*—(*b*) in middle—incorporation why allowable in *inf. ns.* of *conjugs.* mentioned—this the predicament of mobile likes combined in beginning or middle of word—their predicament at end, (*a*) if first have another letter incorporated into it—(*b*) if reduplication be co-ordinative—elision of ا in ^{طِي}—(*c*) if first be unsound—or sound, (*aa*) in *v.*—(*bb*) in *tril. n.*, unaugmented or augmented—(α) ^{فَعْل}—(β) ^{فَعْل}—(γ) ^{فَعْل}—(δ) ^{عَم} — ^{رِدَد} and ^{قَدَد} , ^{سَرَر} and ^{سَرَر} , — (ϵ) ^{فَعْلَان} , ^{فَعْلَان} , ^{فَعْلَان} , and ^{فَعْلَان} — (ζ) ^{أَدَق} — (η) ^{رَاد} , ^{مَدَق} , ^{مَرَد} , ^{مَسْتَعَد} , and ^{أَظَلَّل} — ^{أَشَد} — these the predicaments

of mobile likes combined in one word—
 elision or transfer of vowel from their first
 when incorporation is intended—conditions
 of incorporation if likes be in two words—
 question whether “incorporation” attribut-
 ed to IAl in certain texts be mere stifling—
 or pure incorporation—Readers safer guides
 than GG on this question—incorporation by
 transfer of vowel from first of two likes not
 allowable when likes are in two words—(2)
 that they be not initial—aristic تَاتَبِعْ —
 for تَاتَبِعْ — condition of non-initiality not
 mentioned here by IM—(3-6) that they be
 not on measure of (a) فَعْلٌ, (b) فُعْلٌ, (c)
 فَعْلٌ, (d) فَعْلٌ —incorporation disallowed in
 all these measures—reason of its disallow-
 ance—and in n. commensurable, in its fore
 part, with any of them—as also in فَعْلٌ —
 combination of two mobile likes possible in
 four more measures of tril.—فُعْلٌ not used
 —فَعْلٌ, فُعْلٌ, and فُعْلٌ used—incorporation
 generally prescribed in فَعْلٌ and فُعْلٌ —and
 dissolution in فُعْلٌ —(7) that no letter be
 incorporated into the first of the two likes
 —(8) that mobilization of their second be

not adventitious—(9) that word containing them be not co-ordinated with another—such co-ordinates of three sorts—words cut out from composite expressions—incorporation disallowed in all three sorts—(10) that word containing them be not one of those expressions wherein dissolution is anomalously chosen by the Arabs—whether *vs.*—or *ns.*—dissolution or incorporation allowable in (a) حَيِّ and عَيِّ —reasons for these alternatives— تَعْي —dissolution preferable —(b) تَتَجَلَّى and اِسْتَكْر —(a) and (b) exceptions to rule as to necessity for incorporating first of two mobile likes in one word —(11) that quiescence do not supervene upon their second either through its conjunction with a *nom. pron.*, or through apocopation or quasi-apocopation—such formations of two kinds—meaning of “*nom. pron.*”—no incorporation with it, according to majority of Arabs—dialectic variations—choice allowed, in *apoc.* and *imp.*, between dissolution and incorporation—reason for the latter—meaning of “choice allowed”—effect of incorporation upon *conj.* Hamza in *imp.*—incorporation retained with , of *pl.*, ى of 2nd *pers. sing. fem.*, or *corrob.* ن —

PAGE.

connection of this question with condition (8)—proposed amendment of A's language—vowel of letter that has its like incorporated into it, (a) before ^ا of 3rd *pers. sing. fem.* and ^ا of 3rd *pers. sing. masc.*—^ا and ^ا, allowed by KK, and ^ا by Th—the latter censured for allowing Fath—Kasr a *dial. var.*—(b) before a quiescent—Damm rare—(c) not conjoined with any of the foregoing, from “, of *pl.*” to “quiescent”—dissolution obligatory in ^ا of wonder, and incorporation in ^ا—this proviso a correction of preceding rule as to “choice allowed in *imp.*”—^ا of wonder regarded, by majority of BB, as a *pret. v.*—and ^ا, by Hijāzīs, as a verbal *n.*—vowel of its final—prominent *nom. prons.* attached to it—pause upon double letter—outlets of letters.

- §. 732. Outlet defined—how recognizable—*ex.*—IY's definition—outlets of letters sixteen—(1) of Hamza, ^ا, and |—(2) of ع and ح—(3) of غ and خ—outlets in the throat—relative positions of (a) Hamza, ^ا, and |—opinion

1702—1712

of S—of Akh—disproof of latter—continuation of argument on his opinion—(b) ع and ح, and (o) غ and خ—Hamza, ا, and ى said by Lth to be hollow—and by Khl to be airy—his opinion on relative positions of ع, خ, ه, غ, and خ—these seven letters, from outlets (1-3), guttural—(4) of ق—(5) of ك—difference in their outlets how recognizable—both these letters uvular—ق how articulated by Arabs of the desert—this articulation hereditary—way to account for it—(6) of ج, ش, and ى—their relative positions—their outlet where placed by S—(7) of ض—its position on the side of the tongue—right or left—description of the teeth—central incisors—lateral incisors—canines—bicuspid or premolars—molars—postmolars—position of ض in relation to tongue and teeth—from which side uttered—called “long”—(8) of ل—no letter more extensive in outlet—its outlet where placed by S—(9, 10) of , and ن—ن farther out than ل—, a little farther in than ن—difference in positions of , and ن demonstrated by language of IH—criticism of some of his commentators thus rebutted—

PAGE.

	PAGE.
(11) of ط , د , and ت — (12) of ز , ص , and س —tip of tongue not in contact with central incisors— س prior in outlet to ز . — (13) of ظ , ذ , and ث —these eighteen letters, from outlets (4-13), lingual—(14) of ف —(15) of ب , م , and و — م and و nasal—these four letters, from outlets (14-15), labial—fifteen preceding outlets allotted to twenty-nine primary letters— relative positions of these outlets—(16) of single ن —Fr's differences from S—latter's opinion best—outlet of secondary letters other than single ن .	
§. 733. Number of letters 43—primaries 29—Hamza —their number not complete in other lang- uages—no Hamza in foreign speech, except in inception—nor any ض — ى not an in- dependent letter—but reckoned as a single letter in H's "Speckled Epistle"—Hamza omitted by Mb—but rightly first letter of alphabet—under form of ا — proof of this —soft ا —distinct from Hamza—secondaries 6—all chaste—why called "secondary"—(1) quiescent ن —named "single" and "stifled" —its outlet—(2) ا of Imāla—named اَلْفُ	1712 —1724

ٱلْتَرَحِيمُ —meaning of تَرَحُّمٌ (3) broad ٱ —
 broad ٱ mentioned by IH—not broad ٱ —
 latter how pronounced—found in what *dial.*
 —how written in Codex and elsewhere—(4)
 ش like ج —same as ج like ش —approved
 by S—(5) ص like ز —mentioned in §. 696—
 read in Kur. I. 5—(6) Hamza of betwixt-
 and-between—of three kinds, making chaste
 secondaries 8—hybrids 8—these also second-
 ary—(1) ك like ج —(2) ج like ك —
 exs. of (1) and (2)—both the same—(3)
 ج like ش —IH's assertion that (2) and
 (3) are not real—(4) weak ض —used by
 foreigners trying to speak Arabic—how
 exemplified by Mbn—most easily sounded
 from left side—(5) ص like س —approx-
 imation of ص to س not so good as substitu-
 tion of ص for س —(6) ط like ت —(7) ط
 like ت —(8) ب like ف —often heard from
 foreigners, and of two kinds—these 8
 hybrids used by Arabs who have mixed
 with foreigners—or by the progeny of Arab
 fathers and foreign mothers—additional
 secondaries—(1) ق between ق and ك —
 (2) ج like ز —(3) ش like ز —(4) ي like

	PAGE.
، —(5) ، like ی —explained by 8—dis- allowed by Akh—his pronunciation im- practicable—number of letters 48 or 50.	
§. 734. Classification of letters according to qualities —eighteen divisions notorious—use of quali- ties—(1) vocal—specification—(2) surd—all letters surd or vocal—these two kinds how exemplified—why so exemplified—origin of names “vocal” and “surd”—this distribu- tion of letters agreeable with opinion of ancients—but modified by one modern— his reasons—criticism on his opinion— refutation of one of his reasons—difference between vocal and rigid—(3) rigid—num- ber and specification—(4) lax—(5) inter- mediate—<i>orig.</i> rigid—number and specifica- tion—number of lax—specification—these three kinds how exemplified—why so exemplified—(6) covered—how defined by Jrb—number and specification—definition of covering—inapplicable to ض —another definition—covering indispensable to these letters—name “covered” tropical—(7) open—this name also tropical—(8) elevated —number and specification—definition of elevation and depression—elevation possible without covering, but not covering without elevation—origin of name “elevated”—	1724—1739

this name tropical—but explicable in natural sense—(9) depressed—specification—also called “low”—(10) liquid—no *quad.* or *quin.* devoid of them, unless exotic or anomalous—liquidity defined—liquids lightest of letters—specification—why named “liquid”—best for mixing with others—(11) solid or muted—number and specification—meaning of “solid”—these letters why named “solid”—or “muted”—first name more appropriate—(12) resonant—number and specification—why so named—also called “movent”—difficulty in sounding them quiescent—(13) sibilant—(14) soft—specification—susceptible of prolongation—letters of prolongation and softness, or of softness only—so mentioned in §. 663—explanation of “soft” given in CHd—(15) swerving—its sound how produced—S’s definition—and explanation—(16) reiterated—reckoned as two letters—(17) airy, or ascending or descending—why named (a) “airy”—from one meaning of *ج* —S’s explanation of “airy”—faintness and expansiveness of *ل* as compared with *س* and *ز* —(b) “ascending” or “descending”—from alternative meanings of *ج* —

PAGE.

	PAGE.
this letter also called "sonant"—(18) gabbled—why so named—reason given by IH—said in CHd to be g, not نَضْم and نَضْم—stro g or weak letter put for strong or weak meaning—natural affinity between letters and meanings—classifica- tion of letters according to outlets.	
§. 735. Unity of predicament in approximates as respects (1) incorporation—(2) inter- change in rhyme—نَضْم—cause of incor- poration—pronunciation without it com- parable to gait of shackled—manner of incorporation—preliminary conversion— incorporation really in two likes—<i>exs.</i>— operations requisite for incorporation— modes of conversion and incorporation— rule and obstacle—nature of obstacle—نَضْم and نَضْم.	1740—1744
§. 736. Incorporation regulated by closeness of approximation—concurrence of approxi- mates in one word or two—(1) in one word —confusion not heeded—(a) if both ap- proximates be mobile, incorporation neither necessary nor approved—(b) if first be quiescent, incorporation necessary in two cases—approved in others—(2) in one word	1744—1748

PAGE.

—(a) if both be mobile, incorporation dis-
 allowed if it produce confusion—allowed if
 it do not—(b) if first be quiescent, incor-
 poration, (a) if it produce confusion, dis-
 allowed if approximation be incomplete—
 allowed if it be complete—^{وَدَّ} for ^{وَدَّ} —
 — ^{وَدَّ} and ^{وَدَّ} — no paradigm con-
 taining quiescent ن before , or ل — ^{عَدَّانَ}
 and ^{وَدَّ} — ^{وَدَّ} , ^{وَدَّ} , etc.—(b) if it do
 not produce confusion, necessary—Khl on
^{إِبَّاسَ} and ^{إِرَجَلَ} —S on ^{إِبَّاسَ} and ^{إِرَجَلَ} —
 another preventive of incorporation in ^{وَدَّ}
 —^{وَدَّ} pret. from ^{وَدَّ} not ^{وَدَّ} —but ^{وَدَّ} .

§. 737. Incorporation not absolutely allowed in ap-
 proximates, nor disallowed in remotes—
 sometimes withheld from former, and per-
 mitted to latter—incorporation of approxi-
 mates where found in one word—where
 mostly found—one preventive of it—no
 incorporation of (1) letters of ^{وَدَّ} into approximates—special qualities of these
 letters—cause of disallowance—letters of
^{وَدَّ} not incorporated into approximates,

1748—1757

	PAGE.
but approximates into them—, and ي incorporated, one into the other—سید and لية —IH's explanation of incorporation here—R's criticism on it—incorporation of ض into ش, of , into ل, and of ف into ب, transmitted from Readers—meaning of “incorporation” here—practice of Ks and Fr—and of IAl—(2) sibilants into other letters—what they are incorporated into—(3) covered letters into others, without covering— <i>exs.</i> —فَرَطٌ —اِفْتَعَلَ—(4) guttural letter into more guttural—incorporation of, and into, gutturals—of approximate gutturals—اِذْبَحَاذِه and اِذْبَحَاذُوْا—criticism on statement of fourth case—incorporation of (1) ن into م—(2) six letters of tip of tongue into ض and ش—(3) , and ي—predicament of every letter, in respect of incorporation, to be now explained.	
§. 738. Incorporation general in letters of mouth and tongue—not in letters of throat or lip—Hamza and ʾ not incorporated—process more suited to Hamza—Hamza not incorporated into its like, except in two cases—nor into any other letter, except after alleviation—nor any other letter into it.	1757—1759

	PAGE.
§. 739. not incorporated into like or approximate —reason for its incapacity—alternative reason—nor incorporated into.	1759—1760
§. 740. Letters that are incorporated into their ap- proximates— ʾ into ʔ after or before it—se- paration better, and incorporation good—but not ʔ into ʾ—separation better— ^{أَمَلَحَ حِينًا} —nor ʾ into ʕ — only its like incorporated into it—no approximate.	1760—1761
§. 741. ʕ incorporated into (1) its like—(2) ʔ after or before it—incorporation or separation good in former case—conversion of ʕ into ʔ good in former case, allowable in latter— ʔ not incorporated into ʕ , except after conversion of ʕ into ʔ —instance transmit- ted with conversion of ʔ into ʕ —(3) ʾ , after conversion of both into ʔ — ^{مَحْمُومٌ} and ^{مَحْمُومٌ} —dispute as to allowability of that when ʕ is preceded by ʾ — only its like incorporated into it—no approximate— treatment of ʕ and ʾ when combined—fre- quent among Banū Tamīm.	1761—1765
§. 742. ʔ incorporated into (1) its like—no difficulty in that—(2, 3) ʾ and ʕ —not into ʕ or ʕ —but into ʾ and ʕ , by converting them	1765—1766

	PAGE.
into τ — reason of such incorporation—and conversion— $\ast$ and ε regarded by Z as incorporated into τ .	
§. 743. ε and χ incorporated, each into (1) its like —no difficulty in that—concurrence of ε s or χ s in Kur —(2) its fellow—why ε into ε —separation better, but incorporation good—and preferred by Mb—why χ into ε —separation better—incorporation good—superiority of separation proved—incorporation of higher into lower why allowable here—and not in τ and ε —dispute as to incorporation of ε and τ into ε and χ .	1766—1768
§. 744. Letters of the mouth— ق and ك —like ε and χ —incorporation of (1) each into its like—no difficulty here—(2) ق into ك —incorporation or separation good—reasons for incorporation—(3) ك into ق —incorporation good, but separation better—why better.	1768—1769
§. 745. τ incorporated into (1) its like—no difficulty in that—no concurrence of τ s in Kur —(2) س —incorporation or separation good —no other letter mentioned by S—but ع by AlYazidī —letters incorporated into τ .	1770—1771

	PAGE.
§. 746. ش, ی, and ض not mentioned by IH—ش incorporated only into its like—no concurrence of ش s in Ḳur—not into any of its approximates—reported incorporation of ش into س, and س into ش—not practised by BB—who disallow both—letters incorporated into it.	1771—1772
§. 747. ی incorporated into its like, (1) attached—(2) quasi-attached—(3) detached, when first ی is preceded by Fatha—not Kasra—difference between the two cases—three letters incorporated into it—(1) its like—(2) و, —, and ی adjacent—incorporated, one into the other, whether و be first—or second— <i>exs.</i> of latter—(3) ن—because treated like letters of prolongation and softness.	1772—1775
§. 748. ض incorporated only into its like—incorporation into ش reported—but not free from flaw—adversely criticized—why allowed—not followed in other passages of Ḳur—IY's opinion of it—letters incorporated into ض—why these—and not ح.	1775—1777
§. 749. ل incorporated, (1) if determinative, necessarily into (a) its like—(b) thirteen other letters—their characteristics—causes of its	1777—1781

	PAGE.
incorporation into them—(2) if not determinative, necessarily into , —allowably into remaining twelve—or allowably into all thirteen, its incorporation being good into , , bad into ن , and middling into remainder — <i>exs.</i> in verse—and in readings of Qur—such incorporation how graduated by R—only its like and ن incorporated into it—not , — ^{هـ} and ^{بـ} —why so written.	
§. 750. , not mentioned by IH—incorporated only into its like—not into any other letter—its incorporation into ل disputed—disallowed by S and his school—reported as practised by Ya'kūb and IAl—allowed by Ks and Fr—hardly known among Readers later than IAl— ل and ن incorporated into , .	1782—1783
§. 751. Quiescent ن , including Tanwīn, (1) incorporated into letters of ^{يَوْمَانِ} —necessarily—with some exceptions—cause of incorporation— ^{مِنْ} —or only, preferably into all but ن —(a) with nasality into letters of ^{يَوْمَانِ} —restriction on incorporation into م , ي , and , —(b) without nasality into ل and , —reason for removal, or retention, of nasality—IH's reply to objection against removal	1783—1794

of nasality—R's criticism on it—his analysis of ن's predicaments with (a) ل, ر, م, د, and ی—(b) ب—(c) other non-gutturals—(d) gutturals—retention of nasality with , and ی chaster than removal—existence of nasality in م itself—retention of nasality by some Arabs with ل and , , and omission by some with , and ی—opinion of S and GG on source of nasality with these four letters—his language—(2) displayed separate with six gutturals—separation why necessary—stifling by some with غ and خ—(3) converted into م before ب—in one word or two—motive for conversion—(4) stifled with fifteen remaining letters—reason for stifling—mnemonic phrase ^{لَمْ يَمُوتْ} — ن why omitted—states of ن with reference to approximateness, or remoteness, of following letter—separation with letters of mouth a solecism—necessity of display with gutturals deducible from IH's language—ن's states reckoned as five—mobile ن allowably incorporated into letters of ^{يَمُوتُونَ} —its predicament before fifteen letters mentioned in case (4)—quiescent letter nearer to what follows it than mobile.

PAGE.

	PAGE.
§. 752. Letters of tip of tongue and central incisors — ط , د , ت , ذ , and ث incorporated, (1) one into another—(2) all into ص , ز , and س — ط , ذ , and ث why mentioned before ص , ز , and س —restriction on incorporation of sibilants—what ت meant here—incorporation of first six letters exemplified—covering more chastely retained on incorporation of covered into uncovered letter—IH's wavering as to whether incorporation be then genuine—his argument—analysis of his language—his conclusion—incorporation into ت when an attached <i>nom. pron.</i>—(3) all into ض and ش—this incorporation why allowable—more valid into ض than into ش—(4) ت into ج in reading—ص , ز , and س incorporated, one into another—more often than ط , ذ , and ث —covering properly retained on incorporation of ص into either of its fellows—last three not incorporated into first six.	1704—1800
§. 753. ف not mentioned by IH—incorporated only into its like—its incorporation into ب anomalous—but ب incorporated into it.	1800
§. 754. ب incorporated into (1) its like—(2) ف and م —IAI's practice—his principle—allowability of incorporation not disputed after	1800—1802

	PAGE.
mobile—disputed after quiescent—only its like incorporated into it.	
§. 755. م and ى omitted by IH—م incorporated only into its like—its alleged incorporation, after a mobile, into ب—such م and ب not pronounced as double ب—so-called incorporation merely stifling—as wherever incorporation is forbidden by analogy—ن and ب incorporated into it.	1802—1803
§. 756. ت of اِنْتَلَّ—incorporation of (1) ت into it —(2) it into ت — اِنْتَلَّ — قَتَلَ —how distinguishable from فَعَلَ whose inf. n. is تَفَعَّلٌ — قَتَلَ — elision of vowel from first of two likes why not allowable in يَعْضُ , يَرُدُّ , and يَفْرُ —but allowable here—opinion of Fr— قَتَلَ —aor. and act. and pass. parts.— vowels of their ت and ف — يَقْتُلُ — يَقْتُلُ — concurrence of two quiescents unheeded here—or vowel of first ت merely slurred — يَقْتُلُ — يَقْتُلُ —Kasr of م not allowable — مَرْدُفَيْنِ — مَنَتْنِ — مَنَحَرٌ — orig. مَرْتَدَيْنِ — its evolution — قَتَالَ —Kasr	1803—1822

of ق —(3) it into approximate—allowable only with د or ص—but not forbidden by analogy with any approximate—(4) approximate, or ض , into it—ت here converted into ف—but converse allowable with ث—incorporation omissible, except with ط and د—then ت (a) converted into ط after ض , and ط —and into د after ز and ذ —(b) unaltered after س and ث —necessity for incorporation or conversion, except with ث and س—incorporation by conversion of ط into ط , and ذ into د—and even ض into ط —ت of إِفْتَعَلَ converted after nine letters—into (1) ط after ض , ض , ط , and ط —reason for this substitution—then, (a) after ط , incorporation necessary—(b) after ط , separation allowable—and incorporation by change of first into second, or the converse—this last not named “incorporation” by Readers—*ex.*—(c) after ص , separation allowable—and incorporation, by conversion of second into first—*ex.*—(d) after ض , separation allowable—and incorporation by conversion of second into first—إِطْعَمَ anomalous—(2) د after د , ز ,

and د —reason for this substitution—then,
 (a) after د , incorporation necessary—(b)
 after ج , display allowable—and incorpora-
 tion by conversion of second into first—(c)
 after د , display allowable—and incorporation
 in both its modes— اِدَّكَ rare—(1) and (2)
 the only changes of this ت mentioned here
 by IM—(3) ث after ت —or ت converted
 into ت —separation good—dispute about
 separation—(4) س after س —second why
 converted into first—separation good—most
 prevalent forms with (1) ط , ض , and ص —
 —(2) ز and د , (3) ث , and (4) س —
 change of ت into د after ج —and of ل into
 ت —attached ت of قَعَلْتُ converted into (1)
 ط after ص , ض , ط , and ط —(2) د after د ,
 د , and ز — ت of pron. here assimilated to
 ت cf اِفْتَعَالٌ —reason for assimilation—con-
 sequent conversion—incorporation with ط ,
 د , ص , and ز —incorporation of د , ث ,
 and ط more frequent with attached than
 with detached ت —and separation better
 with latter ت than with former—conversion
 more frequent in ت of اِفْتَعَالٌ than in ت of
 pron.—better not to convert the latter—its

	PAGE.
conversion said to be anomalous— ت of إِسْتَفْعَلَ not incorporated into ف—even if ف be mobile—reason in latter case.	
§. 757. Combination of aoristic ت with ت of تَفَعَّلَ and تَفَاعَلَ alleviable by (1) elision—its cause—which ت elided—remaining ت not incorporated into ف — تَذَكَّرَ and تَذَكَّرُونَ — this elision where found—similar elision in aor. headed by two ن s—(2) incorporation —but not if first ت be (a) not preceded by anything—(b) preceded by quiescent other than letter of prolongation—language of IM and BD—of other GG—this incorporation found only in continuity, and after a letter of prolongation or a vowel—elision requisite for alleviation of aor. in inception—and allowable in continuity—neither elision nor incorporation allowable in aor. of pass.— incorporation of ت into ف in تَفَعَّلَ and تَفَاعَلَ —conj. Hamza then imported in inception—تَفَعَّلَ and تَفَاعَلَ here distinguish- able from اِفْتَعَلَ —this incorporation appli- cable to pret., aor., imp., inf. n., and act. and pass. parts.—not found in conjug. of إِسْطَاعَ — ت is a ف—even when اِسْتَفْعَلَ	1822—1831

PAGE.

- §. 758. Irregular incorporation—^سست and ^سسنة — 1831—1833
 for ^سسدس and ^سسدسة — د and س not convertible one into the other—nor congruous in quality—each therefore converted into ^ست — ^سد for ^سد — incorporation the practice of Tamim—but not regular — ^سعدان — its *dial. vars.*—^سعدان anomalous — ^سعند sometimes used instead.
- §. 759. Deviation to elision when incorporation impossible—such elision classed as incorporation—euphonic and curtailing elisions previously mentioned—present kind of elision found in (1) *aor. act.* of ^تتفاعل and ^تتفعل with aoristic ^ت — both ^ت s allowable—or elision of one—condition of this elision—^ت which ^ت elided—rule for elision—(2) ^تمست, ^تأحست, and ^تظلت — elision of ع — disposal of its vowel if ف be (a) quiescent—(b) mobile—object of Kasr or Damm of ف — elision more frequent in *pret.* than in *aor.* or *imp.*—^تظلت, ^تظلت, and ^تظلت used—elided variously said to be ع or ل — vowel of ف — similarly ^تظلت, etc.—meaning of

ظَلَّتْ — ظَلَّتْ *dial. vars.*—universality of this elision disputed—أَحْسَتْ, etc.—أَحْسِينَ — هَمَّتْ for هَمَّتْ —forms allowable in *aor.* and *imp.*—no elision when ع is pronounced with Fath—قَرَنَ rare—other explanations of قَرَنَ — (3) — أَغْضَضْنَ for غَضْنَ — قَرَنَ — إِسْطَاعَ, *aor.* يَسْطَاعُ —best-known *dial. var.* — then إِسْطَاعَ, *aor.* يَسْتَطَاعُ — إِسْطَاعَ, *aor.* يَسْطَاعُ — إِسْطَاعَ, *aor.* يَسْطَاعُ — إِسْطَاعَ, *aor.* يَسْطَاعُ — elision when approximates or likes are in separate words—*exs.*— of بَنُو elided before ل of *art.*—after elision of unsound letter—regularly in names of clans where ل is not incorporated—بَلْعَمَ — مَلْعَبَ — عَلَى ل — عِلْمَاءَ — مِلْكَدِبَ, and مِلْمَاءَ here elided, after elision of |, before ل of *art.*—*exs.*—foregoing elisions due to impossibility of incorporation—but all irregular—يَتَسَعُ regular—سَلَقَمَةً, جَلَمَرُ, عَلَرَضُ and يَتَقَى anomalous—reason for elision here—تَقَى not of this class—first ت elided in three words—from frequency of

usage—their *act. parts.*—and *prets.*—تَقَى ,
aor. يَتَقَى —dispute about تَخَذَ —and تَقَى
—سَخَذَ more anomalous—how explained
by S—not *orig.* سَخَذَ —but اِتَّخَذَ —why
“more anomalous”—elision and retention
of ن of protection.

APPENDIX.—Specimens of Parsing.

	PAGE.
No. 1. , of رَبّ ,—hypercatalectic Tanwīn.	i—ii
„ 2. سَنَيْنٌ for سَنُونَ <i>pl.</i> of سَنَةٌ .	ii—iv
„ 3. Conjunct <i>n.</i> اِلَّا لَى , and its gender.	iv—vi
„ 4. Affixion of sign of <i>pl.</i> to <i>v.</i> when attribute of explicit <i>n.</i> in <i>pl.</i>	vi—vii
„ 5. <i>Prep.</i> and <i>gen.</i> made <i>pro-ag.</i> notwithstanding presence of direct <i>obj.</i>	vii—viii
„ 6. Allowability of زَيْدٌ ضَرْبُهُ for زَيْدٌ ضَرْبُهُ , and particularity of فَارَسًا in فَارَسًا مَا .	viii—x
„ 7. Suppression of <i>pron.</i> expressing <i>obj.</i> required by second of two <i>ops.</i> in case of contest in government.	x—xii
„ 8. Suppression of <i>op.</i> of unrestricted <i>obj.</i> necessary when <i>inf. n.</i> occurring as such <i>obj.</i> acts as substitute for its <i>op.</i>	xii—xiii

	PAGE.
No. 9. Government of <i>pron.</i> in <i>gen.</i> by <i>حَتَّى</i> .	xiii—xv
„ 10. Analysis of <i>أَفْعَلُ بِهِ</i> in wonder. Proof that <i>أَفْعَلُ</i> is a <i>v.</i> , and <i>بِهِ</i> suppressible when indicated.	xv—xviii
„ 11. Occurrence of <i>ag. latent</i> in <i>نَعِمَ</i> as vague <i>pron.</i> expounded by posterior <i>indet.</i> governed in <i>acc.</i> as <i>sp.</i>	xviii—xx
„ 12. % of silence affixed, by poetic license, to lamented in continuity.	xx—xxi
„ 13. Mood of <i>aor.</i> in <i>apod.</i> when <i>v.</i> of <i>prot.</i> is a <i>lit.</i> or <i>id. pret.</i>	xxi—xxiii
„ 14. Treatment of Hamza of <i>أَلْ</i> after Hamza of interrogation.	xxiv—xxvi
„ 15. Transformation of <i>ي</i> into <i>يَا</i> in <i>نَهَامَ</i> (for <i>نَوَامَ</i>) <i>pl.</i> of <i>نَاوَمَ</i> (for <i>نَاوَمَ</i>).	xxvi—xxvii
L' Envoi.	xxvii